

Interactive Notebook

By a group of supervisors

الصف الخامس الابتدائي الفصل الدراسي الأول

دليل ولي الأمر
Parents' Guide

CONNECT

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
تُصنّف معاً مع الكتاب



5th
Primary
2025

FIRST TERM

Specifications for Fifth Year Primary (1st Term)

English Examination (2024 - 2025)

مواصفات ورقة امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الخامس الإبتدائي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥

Time : One Hour and a Half 2024 / 2025 30 Marks

A Listening [6 Marks]

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d : [6 Marks]

A text about FIFTY [50] words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer FOUR [4] multiple choice questions with Four [4] options each. [One mark and a half each]

- يستمع التلميذ الى نص مكون من حوالي [٥٠] كلمة وعليه أن يجيب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد كل منها متبوعاً بأربع إختيارات.

B Reading [14 Marks]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : [4 Marks]

FOUR [4] MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the FOUR [4] options given. [One mark each]

- يتم إعطاء التلاميذ [٤] جمل على المفردات اللغوية ويطلب منهم اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة من الاختيارات الأربعة المعطاة له.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box : [4 Marks]

An unseen text from FIFTY [50] to SIXTY [60] words with FOUR [4] deletions is provided. FIVE [5] words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with ONE of the FIVE [5] words given. The first sentence should be written in full. [One mark each]

- يقرأ التلميذ نص مكوّن من [٥٠-٦٠] كلمة وعليه أن يكمل أربع فراغات في هذا النص باستخدام الكلمات المعطاه له.

4 Read the text and answer the questions : [6 Marks]

An unseen literary or informational text from EIGHTY [80] to NINETY [90] words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary FIVE. Learners are asked to answer :

- يقرأ التلميذ نص مكون من [٨٠ - ٩٠] كلمة ثم يجيب عن سؤالين [اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة] ويجيب أيضاً عن سؤالين [تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة].

A. TWO [2] MCQs with FOUR [4] options; each dealing with TWO [2] of the following reading comprehension skills : [One mark each]

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

B. TWO [2] open ended questions dealing with TWO [2] of the following reading comprehension skills :

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

[Two marks each]

C Writing [10 Marks]

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences : [2 Marks]

TWO [2] scrambled statements of not less than SIX [6] words each are provided. Learners are asked to reorder the words to form correct sentences. [One mark each]

• يقوم التلميذ بترتيب جملتين لا تقل كلمات كل جملة عن ٦ كلمات غير مرتبة.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets : [2 Marks]

TWO [2] structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. [One mark each]

• يقرأ التلميذ جملتين على [القواعد اللغوية] وعليه أن يكمل كل جملة بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات المعطاه له بين القوسين.

7 Punctuate the following : [One Mark]

ONE [1] simple statement [sentence OR question] of about SIX [6] words with TWO [2] missing punctuation marks is provided [Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma]. Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

[Half a mark each]

• يعطى التلميذ جملة من حوالى [٦] كلمات وكل جملة بها اثنان من علامات الترقيم ناقصة.

8 Write a text of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements : [5 Marks]

Learners are asked to write not less than THIRTY [30] words related to a specific topic using TWO [2] given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file , tables ... etc. in ONE [1] of the following writing forms :

Paragraph – Biography

• يكتب التلميذ فقرة إنشائية أو سيرة ذاتية لا تقل عن [٣٠] كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة له.

[One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for vocabulary - One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation].

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الخامس الابتدائي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤/٢٠٢٥ First Term

Months	Connect Primary Five [Student's Book]
October	Unit 1 + Unit 2 + Unit 3
November	Review 1 + Unit 4 + Unit 5
December	Unit 6 + Review 2
January 2025	General Revision

Reading and writing skill

مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1 How to deal with "Reading Comprehension Question"

هو عبارة عن قطعة فهم تتكون من [٨٠-٩٠] كلمة وعلى الطالب أن يجيب عن الأسئلة التالية:

١- سؤالين اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

[حدد الفكرة العامة في النص - وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص - حدد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص]

٢- سؤالين من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية :

[وضح العلاقة بين شخصين، حدثين أو فكرتين أو معلومتين في النص - ضع استنتاجات منطقية في النص - لخص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص]

★ Read the text and answer the questions.

To stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. Keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information [e.g. telephone number]. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Everyone should follow these instructions to stay safe online.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

• Identify the general idea of the text.

حدد الفكرة العامة في النص.

1. This text is about ".....".

a. Pollution

b. Celebrating festivals

c. Having fun

d. Being safe online

• Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.

وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص.

2. You should tell your if you're worried about something.

a. neighbors

b. friends

c. parents

d. classmates

• Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

حدد معنى كلمات أو عبارات في النص.

3. The underlined word "online" means connected to the

a. TV

b. radio

c. internet

d. library

B Answer the following questions.

• Describe the relationship between two pieces of information in a text.

وضح العلاقة بين معلومتين في النص.

- Why shouldn't you tell anyone your personal information ?

- To stay safe online.

• Make logical inferences from the text.

ضع استنتاجات منطقية من النص.

A. • Infer the instructions you should follow to stay safe online.

اذكر اثنين .

• Don't make friends with people you don't know.

• Don't send photos to people you don't know.

- B. • What will happen if we answer a video call from someone we don't know ?

- We won't be safe online.

- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

لخص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص.

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

- How to stay safe online.

2 How to write an email :

كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

From	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل
To	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
Subject	موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you.

..... موضوع الرسالة

Yours,

اسم الراسل

3 How to write a biography :

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية

1. Introduce the person, giving their names. - قم بتقديم الشخص (ذاكرًا اسمه).

- [Name of a person] is

- He/She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد

- She/He began

2. Say why they are famous and give details about them.

- اذكر لماذا هم مشهورين واعط تفاصيل عنهم.

- She / He was the first

- She / He was / is successful because

- She / He won

3. Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.

- اعط تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام وهامين.

- He / She won

- He / She is also / Moreover / As well as this , he / she is

4. Say what you think could happen next for their career.

- اذكر ما تعتقد أنه سيحدث لهم في حياتهم العملية فيما بعد.

- I think he / she will become the most

CONTENTS

► **THEME 1** | I discover myself

Unit 1	We plant our food	16
Unit 2	I want to be healthy!	57
Unit 3	How do I look ?	99
Review 1	.....	136

► **THEME 2** | Myself and others

Unit 4	Looking after our world	140
Unit 5	Jobs we do	171
Unit 6	What's the weather like ?	211
Review 2	.....	242

► **Monthly Assessments** 243

► **Listening Texts** 247

► **Answers of Topics** 252

علامة **SB** تشير إلى أسئلة كتاب المدرسة



THEME

1

I discover myself



We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا

Aims of Unit One : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث، وأكتب عن أنواع الطعام المختلفة.
- listen to a conversation about favorite food.
- أستمع إلى محادثة عن الطعام المفضل.
- practice making suggestions with "how about".
- أتدرب على تقديم اقتراحات باستخدام (how about) بمعنى "ماذا عن".
- read a fairy tale.
- أقرأ قصة خيالية.
- practice saying vowel sounds.
- أتدرب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة.
- understand decimal fractions.
- أفهم الكسور العشرية.
- write a recipe.
- أكتب وصفة طعام.
- research and make a poster about fruits and vegetables that grow in Egypt.
- أبحث وأصنع ملصقًا عن الفاكهة والخضروات التي تنمو في مصر.





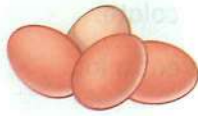
I

Vocabulary

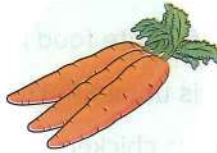
► Key vocabulary



beans فول



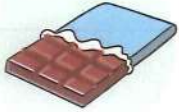
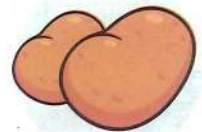
eggs بيض



carrots جزر



onions بصل

coconuts
جوز هندchocolate
شيكولاتةlemons
ليمون [أصفر]pineapples
أناناسlimes
ليمون حامض [أخضر]potatoes
بطاطس

► Extra vocabulary

favorite	مفضل	lemonade	عصير ليمون	pot	إناء / وعاء
chicken	دجاج	healthy	صحي	fresh	طازج
mango	مانجو	unhealthy	غير صحي	drink	يشرب / مشروب

► Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
collect	يجمع	collected
plant	يزرع	planted
love	يحب	loved
pick	يقطف	picked

Irregular

Present		Past
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشترى	bought

Did you know ?

Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.

لا ينمو الأناناس على الأشجار! إنما ينمو على الأرض.

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the market

في السوق

in the garden

في الحديقة

That's easy!

هذا سهل!

It's OK to + [inf.] [مصدر الفعل] لا بأس أن +

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Fareeda's favorite food	favorite	Fareeda's favorite food is chocolate.
	unhealthy	Chocolate is unhealthy if you eat a lot.
	chicken	Fareeda likes chicken and fish.
	tree - garden	Fareeda's family have a mango tree in their garden.
	grow - onions	Fareeda's uncle grows onions and potatoes.
	collect - sell	Fareeda's uncle collects fresh eggs and sells them at the market.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- is my favorite healthy fruit.
a. Pineapple b. Milk c. Chocolate d. Chicken
- A farmer onions and potatoes.
a. throws b. draws c. reads d. grows
- I buy fresh vegetables at the
a. garden b. market c. beach d. bank
- is delicious, but it isn't healthy.
a. Lime b. Chicken c. Chocolate d. Meat
- Rabbits' favorite food is
a. limes b. eggs c. carrots d. onions
- They raise chickens to get fresh every day.
a. milk b. onions c. eggs d. pineapples
- I always have and eggs for breakfast.
a. pens b. bones c. beans d. balls

II

Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع و اقرأ.

Does Fareeda think chocolate is healthy ?



What's your favorite food, Fareeda ?

ما هو طعامك المفضل يا فريدة ؟

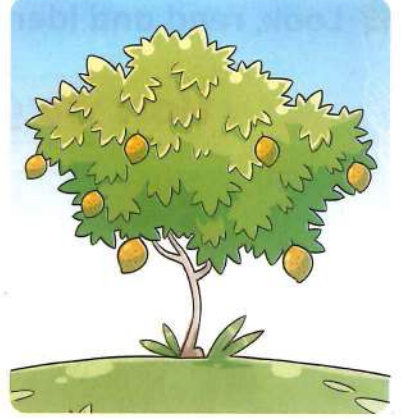
That's easy ! It's chocolate.

هذا سؤال سهل ! إنها الشيكولاتة.



Mmm ... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it ?

مممم ... أحب الشيكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك ؟



I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

أعتقد أنه لا بأس من تناول القليل منها. لكن بالفعل، من غير الصحي أن تأكل منها الكثير.



What's your favorite healthy food ?

ما هو طعامك الصحي المفضل ؟

Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

أوه، أنا أحب الدجاج وأحب السمك. لكن المفضل لدى هو المانجو. لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.



I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

أنا أحب المانجو أيضًا. ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو. لدينا شجرة ليمون حامض وشجرة ليمون أصفر.

My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

يزرع عمي البصل والبطاطس. لديه دجاج أيضًا. يقوم بجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم وفي بعض الأحيان يقوم ببيعه في السوق.



• Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly.

- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة.

III

Language functions

To ask about someone's favorite food.

للسؤال عن الطعام المفضل لشخص.

What's your favorite food ? ما هو طعامك المفضل؟

It's chicken. إنه الدجاج.

★ Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

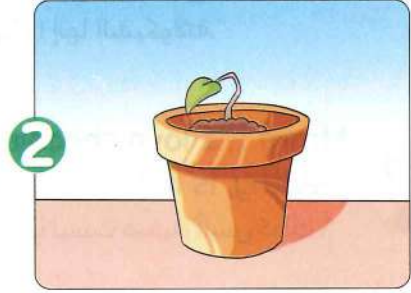


How we grow lemons كيف نزرع الليمون



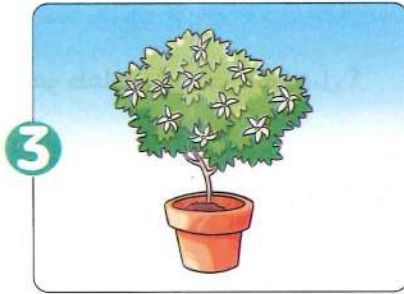
The girl is planting a lemon seed in a pot.

تزرع البنت بذرة الليمون في إناء.



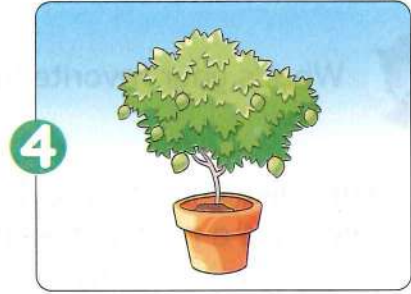
The lemon tree is starting to grow.

تبدأ شجرة الليمون في النمو.



Some flowers are growing.

تنمو بعض الأزهار.



There are lemons on the tree.

يوجد ثمار ليمون على الشجرة.



The girl is picking the lemons.

تقطف البنت ثمار الليمون.



She is making lemonade.

إنها تصنع عصير ليمون.

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures, read and identify how we grow lemons.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويتعرف على كيفية زراعة الليمون.

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Donia and Sara are
a. mothers b. friends c. sisters d. cousins
- Donia likes, fish and rice.
a. chicken b. pizza c. cakes d. cookies
- Sara's favorite fruit is
a. fig b. banana c. mango d. apple
- Sara and Donia have dinner together on
a. Sundays b. Fridays c. Tuesdays d. Mondays

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My mom bought fresh to make us delicious lemonade.
a. onions b. beans c. lemons d. eggs
- The farmer eggs and sells them at the market.
a. breaks b. collects c. grows d. plants
- It's if you eat a lot of chocolate.
a. good b. healthy c. useful d. unhealthy
- My uncle planted an apple tree in his
a. office b. library c. room d. garden

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

picks - lemons - pot - egg - grow

My uncle Ali has a nice garden. He has many trees. He grows
[1] in his garden. First, he plants a lemon seed in a [2]
Then, the lemon tree starts to [3] After that, some flowers
grow. Now, there are lemons on the tree. My uncle [4] the
lemons and makes us fresh juice.

[قنا - دشنا ٢٠٢٤]

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل.

[A]

1. market - onions - sells - He - the - at.

2. like - and - I - fish - chicken.

[القاهرة - حلوان ٢٠٢٤]

[B]

1. He - fresh - collects - every - eggs - day.

2. garden - mangoes - We - in - our - grow.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

My name's Dina. I'm in grade five. I like healthy food. I help my mom in the kitchen. My brother likes chocolate. I like chocolate too, but I don't eat a lot. Chocolate is delicious, but it isn't healthy. On the weekend, we visit our uncle. He grows trees in his garden. He has a lemon tree and a lime tree. My uncle shows me a beautiful mango tree. It's interesting. My cousins always have fresh fruits and vegetables from the garden. I like playing with my cousins in the garden and helping my uncle.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Dina's brother likes

- a. chicken b. chocolate c. potatoes d. lime

2. The underlined word 'beautiful' is the opposite of "" .

- a. ugly b. nice c. delicious d. good

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Dina do on the weekend ?

4. What does Dina like doing with her cousins ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

ali thinks ice cream is healthy

7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة انشائية مكونة من (٣٠) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Your favorite food

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What's your favorite food ?
- Do you like healthy food ?

[الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤]



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



pizza بيتزا



grapes عنب



honey عسل



yogurt زبادي



ful medames فول مدمس

mahalabia مهلبية
[نوع من الطعام حلو المذاق]

french fries بطاطس مقلية



shopping list قائمة تسوق

• Extra vocabulary

unpack	يفرغ الحقيبة	price	ثمن	delicious	لذيذ
cucumbers	خيار	dessert	تحلية/الحلو [بعد الأكل]	bowl	سلطانية
customer	زبون	cupboard	دولاب / خزانة	diaries	يوميات / مذكرات
balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	fried eggs	بيض مقلی	top	قمة
lucky	محظوظ	boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق	pound	جنيه
juicy	كثير العصارة	market seller	بائع في السوق	lovely	جميل - رائع
fridge	ثلاجة	nuts	مكسرات		

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for lunch	لوجبة الغداء	there you go	تفضل
in total	في المجموع الكلي	act out	يمثل / يتصرف
How much ... ?	كم الثمن ... ?	of course	بالطبع
would like	يرغب - يريد	sensible choices	اختيارات منطقية

Tip! : Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.

نصيحة! : تأكد من تناولك لنظام غذائي متوازن حتى يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Bees make , so they are very useful insects.
a. tea b. juice c. honey d. shopping
2. He cuts the potatoes to make
a. french fries b. ful medames c. jam d. milk
3. We use milk to make
a. grapes b. honey c. yogurt d. nuts
4. The list makes me remember what I want to buy.
a. cooking b. driving c. playing d. shopping

II Listening and Reading



Narrator 1 : Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes ?

Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they ?



They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

OK. We'll have a kilogram, please.



How about buying some carrots too ?

No, thank you.



Mom, please can we have a pineapple ?

Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.



There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.



Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

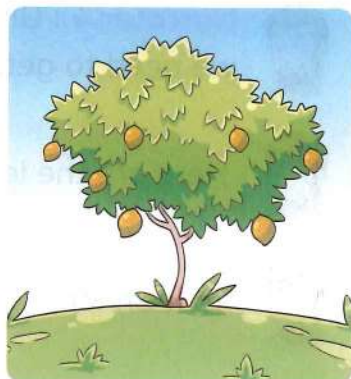
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.



Narrator 2 :

I really like coming to your house, Grandma.

I like it when you visit me, Nada.



We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.

I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now ?



Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut ?

Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.



Narrator 3 :

Ashraf, will you come to the market with me ?

Yes, of course. What do we need to buy ?



We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday ? Uncle Faisal is coming.

Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!



OK, are there any onions in the fridge ?

No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.





Narrator 4 : OK, what do we need to get, Amal ?

Mom says three lemons and some eggs.



Here are the lemons.

The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!



Is it on Mom's list ?

No, it isn't. But can I have some, please ?



OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal!



Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please ?

Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!



Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays – it isn't very healthy.

OK. Where shall I put the cookies ?



Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one – they aren't very healthy!

OK. I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.



Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge ? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

Yes, it's there with the carrots.



Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight ? I bought a bag of nuts.

Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!



★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

1

Hello, what would you like ?
مرحبًا، ماذا تريدان ؟

I would like some carrots, please.
أود بعض من الجزر، من فضلك.

2

Are there any tomatoes ?
هل يوجد أى من ثمار الطماطم ؟

Yes, look! There are lots of tomatoes.
نعم، انظري ! يوجد الكثير من ثمار الطماطم.

3

Would you like some oranges ?
هل تودين بعض من البرتقال ؟

Yes, of course.
نعم، بالطبع.

Yes, please. Can I have some grapes too ?
نعم، من فضلك. هل يمكنني الحصول على بعض العنب أيضًا ؟

4

How about buying some lemons and pineapples, too ?
ما رأيك في شراء بعض من الليمون والأناناس أيضًا ؟

No, thanks. That's all I need for now.
لا، شكرًا. هذا كل ما أريده الآن.

III Language functions

Making suggestions تقديم الاقتراحات

How about + [noun] / [inf. + ing] ... ؟ ؟ ماذا عن ؟



How about having fish for lunch ?

ماذا عن تناول السمك في وجبة الغداء ؟



1. Help your child look at the pictures and read.
2. Help your child learn how to make suggestions.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يقدم اقتراحات.

IV

Language focus

1

Countable nouns

Uncountable nouns

- الأسماء التي [تُعد] لها [مفرد وجمع].
- الاسم المفرد الذي [يُعد] يسبق بأداة نكرة [a/an].

an apple	apples	rice	water
a potato	potatoes	salt	sugar
an orange	oranges	cheese	milk

a / an :

- We use "a" with singular countable nouns that begin with a consonant.
◀ نستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفرد المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن.
- Ex. - I would like a banana, please.
- We use "an" with singular countable nouns that begin with a vowel.
◀ نستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفرد المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك.
- Ex. - I would like an orange, please.

2 some - any

A. some بعض

Usage : We use "**some**" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.  نستخدم "**some**" مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء الغير معدودة في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة.

1. Countable nouns :

١. مع الأسماء التي تعد :

some books some chairs some eggs

- - I have **some books**.

2. Uncountable nouns :

٢. مع الأسماء التي لا تعد لتشير إلى كمية غير محددة :

some water some sugar some salad

- - She has **some juice**.

◀ لاحظ أن **[some]** تستخدم في السؤال في حالة العرض والطلب :

- - Would you like **some tea** ? [عرض]

- Can I have **some water**, please ? [طلب]

Notes for parents

1. Help your child know the difference between countable and uncountable nouns.
2. Help your child know how to use "some" and "any".

B. any أي

Usage : We use "any" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in questions and negative sentences.

◀ نستخدم [any] مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة في حالتي الاستفهام والنفي.

any rice any pens

A. Negative statements :

• الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

▶ - There aren't any vegetables in the fridge.

[Countable noun]

- I don't have any coffee in the kitchen.

[Uncountable noun]

B. Interrogative :

• صيغة الاستفهام :

▶ - Do you have any tomatoes ?

[Countable noun]

- Is there any salad in the dish ?

[Uncountable noun]



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. There is [any] water on the floor.

2. We want [any] tea, please.

3. I went to the zoo yesterday and I saw [a] elephant.

4. They didn't eat [any] apples.

[الأقصر - الأقصر ٢٠٢٤]

5. Would you like [any] coffee ?

6. There aren't [some] oranges in the kitchen. [الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٤]

7. Can I have [any] rice, please ?

8.  We have [an] big fridge.

9. Do you have [some] salt ?

10. There are [any] oranges in the tree.

11. Would you like [some] pineapple ?

12. She needs [any] cucumbers for salad.

13. We have [an] chicken and some pasta for lunch.

14. They don't have [some] french fries.

15. I would like [any] honey in milk.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

تدريب تلقائي
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



- I would like cheese, please.
a. any b. some c. an d. a
- There aren't books on the table.
a. any b. some c. an d. a
- My mother needs onion.
a. some b. a c. an d. any

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

The food diaries from healthiest to unhealthiest

يوميّات الطعام من الأكثر صحة إلى الغير الصحي

Meals

breakfast وجبة الإفطار



in the morning

lunch وجبة الغداء



in the afternoon

dinner وجبة العشاء



in the evening



Breakfast : ful medames and bread, boiled egg, fresh juice

فول مدمس وخبز، بيضة مسلوقة وعصير طازج

Lunch : koshari, salad, an orange

كشري، سلطة وبرتقالة

Dinner : yogurt, fruit salad

زبادي وسلطة فواكه



Breakfast : cheese and bread, cucumber, jam

جبين وخبز، خيار ومربى

Lunch : chicken, french fries, rice

دجاج، بطاطس مقلية وأرز

Dinner : yogurt, honey, cake

زبادي، عسل وكيك



Breakfast : 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese

٢ بيضة مقلية، بطاطس مقلية وجبنة

Lunch : burger and french fries

برجر وبطاطس مقلية

Dinner : pizza

بيتزا

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify the food diaries from healthiest to unhealthiest.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على يوميّات الطعام من الأكثر صحة إلى الأقل صحة.

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Huda likes visiting her house. [الغربية - بليون ٢٠٢٤]
a. grandpa's b. grandma's c. uncle's d. sister's
- Huda's grandma has a tree in her garden.
a. fig b. banana c. mango d. pineapple
- They usually have fresh and mangoes from the garden.
a. onions b. lemons c. figs d. tomatoes
- Huda's grandma usually makes coconut for them.
a. cake b. juice c. mahalabia d. cookies

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I like strawberry jam. It's very
a. bad b. delicious c. lucky d. salty
- He would like a pineapple. It's
a. unlucky b. juicy c. lucky d. unhealthy
- You can eat for dessert. [الإليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤]
a. rice b. mahalabia c. onions d. tomatoes
- We need some for salad.
a. burgers b. nuts c. cucumbers d. jam

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

helped - vegetables - bowl - unpacked - lovely

Yesterday, Noha and Ali went to the market with their mom. They bought fruits and [1] When they went back home, Noha and Ali helped their mom. Noha [2] the bags. Ali put the fruits in the fruit [3] Mom prepared lunch for them and she was happy because they [4] her.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل.

[A] 1. would - like - I - apples - some - ,please.

2. some - buying - about - lemons - , too - How ?

[B] 1. like - you - What - would - lunch - for ?

[الإسكندرية - المتنزه ٢٠٢٣]

2. onions - the fridge - Are - any - there - in ?

• **5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

[A]

1. There [is] some chairs in the room.

2. Can I have [any] water, please ?

[البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤]

[B]

1. How about [has] boiled eggs for breakfast ?

2. I would like a pineapple and [a] orange.

• **6 Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Laila. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six. I have my breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. My sister likes to have fried eggs and bread. My parents like to have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables and rice for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Laila's have ful medames for breakfast.

a. friends

b. brothers

c. sisters

d. parents

2. The underlined phrase "get up" means

a. wake up

b. climb

c. play

d. sleep

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Laila go in the afternoon ?

.....

4. What does Laila have for breakfast ?

.....

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

can i have some grapes, please ?

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

[الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٣]

• **8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (٣٠) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Balanced diet

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• What do you have for breakfast ? • What healthy food do you have ?

.....

.....

- ▶ Jack and the beanstalk
- ▶ Pronunciation
- ▶ CLIL : Math



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا	giant	عملاق	castle	قلعة
poor	فقير	free	حُرّ	axe	فأس
rich	غني	golden egg	بيضة من الذهب	terrible	مزعج / فظيع
cage	قفص	floor	ارضية	magic	سحري

• Extra vocabulary

cow	بقرة	kind	عطوف	angry	غاضب
gold	ذهب	hen	دجاجة	hungry	جائع
beans	حبوب [الفاصوليا]	person	شخص	ground	أرض [يابسة]
cloud	سحابة	special	خاص / مميز	coins	عملات معدنية

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present		Past		Present		Past	
climb	يتسلق	climbed		throw	يرمي / يلقي	threw	
count	يعد	counted		fall	يسقط	fell	
cry	يبكي	cried		meet	يقابل	met	
chop	يقطع	chopped					
grab	يمسك / ينتزع	grabbed					
reach	يصل	reached					
save	ينقذ	saved					

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

run away	يهرب	on the way to ...	في الطريق إلى ...
at last	في النهاية	throw out of ...	يرمي خارج ...
as soon as	بمجرد أن	Thank you for ...	شكراً لك على ...
ever after	منذ ذلك الحين		

لاحظ: أن كلمة (beans) تشير إلى البقوليات مثل الفول، الفاصوليا واللوبيا.

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
giant	a very, very big person شخص حجمه كبير جدًا
grab	to pick something up quickly أن تلتقط شيئاً بسرعة
castle	a very large building built a long time ago مبنى كبير جدًا بنى منذ وقت طويل
chop	to cut something down أن تقطع شيئاً ما
cage	a box in which we keep animals صندوق نربي فيه الحيوانات

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Jack and the beanstalk	mother - poor	Jack and his mother were very poor.
	market - sell	Jack went to the market to sell their last cow.
	special beans	Jack bought special beans from an old man.
	throw - window	Jack's mother threw the beans out of the window.
	beans - tall	The special beans grew to a very tall beanstalk.
	climbed - castle	Jack climbed the beanstalk then found a castle.
	giant - magic	Jack saw a giant and a magic hen in the castle.
	chop - beanstalk	Jack chopped down the beanstalk to help the hen.
	fall - ground	The giant fell on the ground.
	buy - food	Jack sold the golden eggs to buy food.
	happily	Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The is a very large building built a long time ago.
a. axe b. castle c. market d. cage
- The bird was angry because it couldn't fly out of its
a. cage b. garden c. ground d. floor
- The loud music was It makes him angry.
a. nice b. magic c. terrible d. great
- The farmers use their to dig the land.
a. spoon b. axe c. plate d. bottle

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Jack and the Beanstalk

چاك وساق الفاصوليا

The beginning

Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

كان چاك ووالدته فقراء للغاية. قالت والدته چاك "اذهب إلى السوق وقم ببيع آخر بقرة لنا. من فضلك يا چاك، قم ببيعها بثمان جيد!"



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.

في الطريق إلى السوق، قابل چاك رجلاً عجوزاً. فقال الرجل له "أنا معي هذه الحبوب المميزة. هل تريد أن تشتريها؟ ستجعلك غني!"



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

اشترى چاك الحبوب. لكن كانت والدته غاضبة للغاية وقالت "نحن نحتاج إلى طعام يا چاك وليس حبوب!" وألقتهم خارج الشرفة. فقال چاك "آسف يا والدتي، اعتقدت أنها ستساعدنا." وذهب چاك للفراش. وكان حزيناً وجائعاً جداً.



The middle

The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

في الصباح التالي، رأى چاك ساق نبات فاصوليا طويل جداً في الحديقة. لقد كانت مرتفعة إلى السحاب. فتسلق چاك ساق الفاصوليا. عندما وصل چاك إلى قمة الساق، رأى قلعة. فدخل چاك ليرى ما إذا كان هناك أحد يحتاج للمساعدة.



Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the floor. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen were some golden eggs.



فجأة رأى جاك عملاق كبير جدًا يعد حقائب من العملات الذهبية. وكان يوجد دجاجة على الأرض. كانت الدجاجة بداخل قفص. وبجانب الدجاجة كان هناك بعض البيض الذهبي.

The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please." cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!" "I'll help you!" said Jack.



كانت تبدو الدجاجة حزينة جدًا. لقد كانت دجاجة سحرية وكانت تستطيع التحدث! صرخت الدجاجة قائلة: "ساعدني من فضلك." "انقذني من هذا العملاق المزعج!" قال جاك "سوف أساعدك!"

The End

As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!



بمجرد أن وصل جاك إلى حديقته، التقط فأسه. قام بقطع ساق نبات الفاصوليا. فسقط العملاق على الأرض وهرب. كانت الدجاجة سعيدة! لقد تحررت في النهاية!

"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.



قالت الدجاجة "شكرًا على مساعدتي يا جاك. أنت ولد عطوف جدًا. هل يمكنني من فضلك أن أبقى معك أنت ووالدتك؟" لم يعد جاك ووالدته فقراء. باع جاك ووالدته البيض الذهبي ليشتروا طعام. عاش جاك ووالدته سعداء منذ ذلك الحين.

Make logical inferences.

قم بعمل

استنتاجات منطقية.

Learn

1. Why was the hen sad ?

- Because it was in a cage.

Practice

2. Why do you think Jack is a good boy ?

III Pronunciation

Vowel sounds

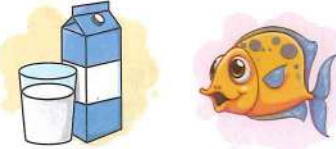
• Short vowels

The letter [a] makes the sound /æ/.



candy حلوى mango مانجو

The letter [i] makes the sound /ɪ/.



milk لبن fish سمك

The letter [e] makes the sound /e/.



egg بيضة bread خبز

• Long vowels

The letters [a-e] make the sound /eɪ/.



grapes عنب cake كعكة/تورته bake يخبز

The letters [i-e] make the sound /aɪ/.



lime ليمون حامض rice أرز

The letters [ay] make the sound /eɪ/.



play يلعب say يقول

The letters [ea] make the sound /i:/.



bean فول meat لحمة



Pop Quiz on pronunciation

• Read and circle the odd sound. اقرأ و ضع دائرة حول الصوت المختلف.

1. grape – bread – snake

2. rice – milk – lime

3. meet – candy – mango

4. snail – rain – bean

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

► Some words sound the same but have different spellings.

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق الصوتي ولكن لها هجاء مختلف.

ai → /eI/	ay → /eI/	a - e → /eI/
 snail قوقعة  tail ذيل	 play يلعب  stay يمكث / يبقى  gray لون رمادي	 snake ثعبان  cake كيك

• Look, read and complete. انظر، اقرأ وأكمل.

1. I say , "Let's pl _ _ " !



2. Let's bake a c _ k _ .



3. Sn _ _ ls have tails.



4. I like to eat b _ _ ns and _ ggs.



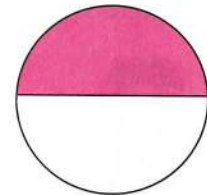
IV Math

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

• Decimal fraction : الكسر العشري



A fraction is
a part of a whole.
الكسر هو جزء من
الواحد الصحيح.



A fraction consists of
two parts.

الكسر يتكون من جزئين.

1 ← Numerator البسط
2 ← Denominator المقام

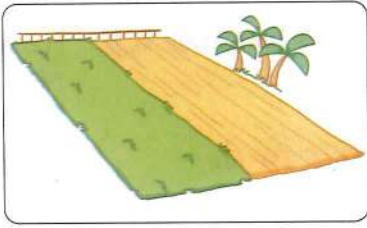
► In decimal fraction, the numerator is divided by the denominator.

في الكسور العشرية، تتم قسمة البسط على المقام.

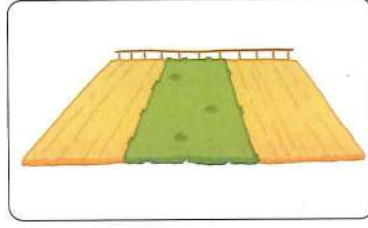
$$\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$$

$$\frac{2}{5} = 2 \div 5 = 0.4$$

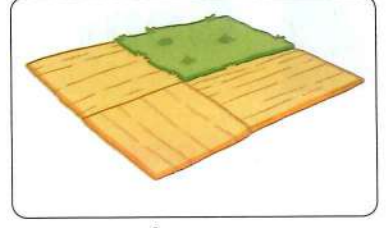
Did you know ? 0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400



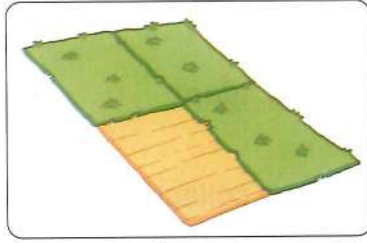
$$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$$



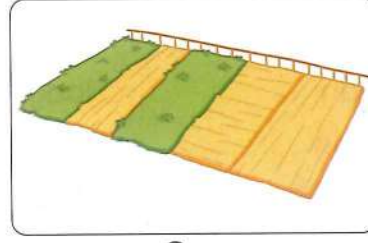
$$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$$



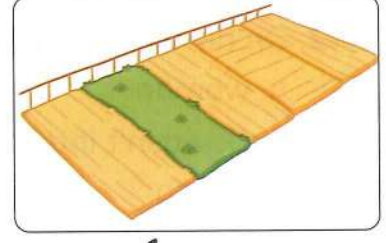
$$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$$



$$\frac{2}{4} = 0.75$$



$$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$$



$$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$$

• Learn.

- The numerator tells how many parts are being identified.

- البسط يذكر كم عدد الأجزاء المعدودة.

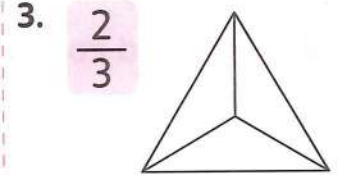
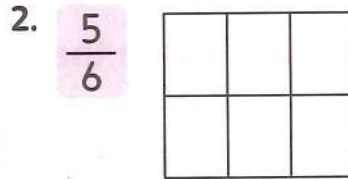
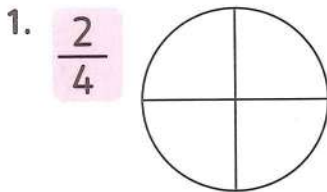
- The denominator tells the total number.

- المقام يذكر العدد الكلي.



Pop Quiz on Math

1 Color to show the fraction. لون لإظهار الكسر.



2 Write each of the following fractions using a decimal point.

اكتب الكسور الآتية مستخدمًا العلامة العشرية.

1. $\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$

2. $\frac{3}{4} = \dots\dots\dots = \dots\dots\dots$

3. $\frac{1}{4} = \dots\dots\dots = \dots\dots\dots$

4. $\frac{1}{5} = \dots\dots\dots = \dots\dots\dots$

5. $\frac{2}{5} = \dots\dots\dots = \dots\dots\dots$

6. $\frac{1}{2} = \dots\dots\dots = \dots\dots\dots$

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Jack went to the market to sell his
a. cat b. cow c. dog d. lizard
- On his way, he met an old
a. woman b. man c. lady d. giant
- Jack wasn't interested in the beans.
a. selling b. eating c. buying d. collecting
- Jack bought the at last.
a. cows b. pens c. eggs d. beans

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- When we pick something up quickly, we it.
a. chop b. cut c. grab d. count
- To is to cut something down. [السويس - جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٣]
a. count b. chop c. plant d. pick
- The brave man the young boy from getting injured.
a. sold b. threw c. hid d. saved
- The hen has golden eggs and it can talk.
a. loud b. wide c. magic d. low

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

food - count - house - magic - feathers

Ali was a poor young boy. He lived with his parents in a small [1] One day, Ali found a weak bird. The bird looked strange. Ali helped the weak bird and gave it [2] and drink. When the bird got better, it gave Ali some special [3] Ali took the feathers and went back to his parents. The feathers were [4] and they changed Ali's life.

[المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!". On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans.

Do you want to buy them ? They will make you rich!" said the man. Jack bought the beans, but his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.


- The opposite of the underlined word "angry" is " ".
a. happy b. sad c. terrible d. annoyed
- Jack and his mother wanted to sell their
a. hen b. goat c. cow d. beans

B. Answer the following questions.

- What did Jack buy from the old man ?
.....
- Why was Jack's mother angry ?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل.

-  very - terrible - The - giant - was. (الإسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٣)

- on - was - a hen - There - floor - the.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- [A] 1. There are [any] golden eggs with the giant.

- Rice [are] my favorite food.

- [B] 1. I don't have [some] beans in the kitchen.

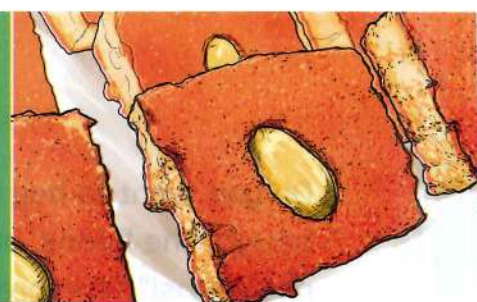
(الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٤)

- My mother bought [any] onions.

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

thank you for helping me, jack.



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

ingredients	مكونات	lentil soup	شوربة عدس
oven	فرن	diamond	ماسة
recipe	وصفة طهي	mixture	خليط
semolina	دقيق سميد	saucepan	قدر / إناء صغير
syrup	شراب السكر	almonds	لوز

• Extra vocabulary

sugar	سكر	shape	شكل	melted	مذاب
knife	سكين	cocktail juice	عصير كوكتيل	molokhia	ملوخية
dish	طبق	baking powder	خميرة الخبز	basbousa	بسبوسة
butter	زبدة	minute	دقيقة	add	يضيف

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
bake يخبز	baked	make يصنع	made
mix يخلط	mixed	put يضع	put
pour يسكب / يصب	poured	take يأخذ	took
boil يغلي	boiled	cut يقطع	cut
share يشارك	shared	find يجد	found

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

weigh out	يزن	take ... out	يُخرج
for about 10 minutes	لمدة حوالي ١٠ دقائق	by hand	باليد / يدويًا
turn ... on	يُشغل ...	looks really pretty	تبدو جميلة للغاية

Note : When writing a recipe, use the base form of verbs, and imperatives to give instructions. Use sequence words (first, then, after that, etc.) to organize your steps.

عند كتابة وصفة «طهي» استخدم مصدر الفعل وصيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات و استخدم الكلمات التي تعبر عن التسلسل «أولاً، ثم، بعد ذلك ... إلخ» لترتيب الخطوات.

Abbreviations اختصارات

tsp → teaspoon [small spoon] ملعقة شاي (ملعقة صغيرة)

tbsp → tablespoon [large spoon] ملعقة طعام (ملعقة كبيرة)

What is the recipe for ?

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

My favorite recipe

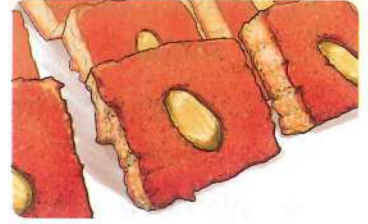
وصفتي المفضلة

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and molokhia. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

First, you need to turn your oven^[1] on to get it hot. Then, weigh out the ingredients^[2]. Then, you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this ! Then, you add the yogurt and pour^[3] the mixture into a baking dish.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. Boil^[4] the mixture for about 10 minutes. Take it out of the oven. Then, pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!



Ingredients

2 cups semolina	٢ كوب سميد
1 cup yogurt	١ كوب زبادي
$\frac{1}{3}$ cup sugar	$\frac{1}{3}$ كوب سكر
$\frac{1}{2}$ cup melted butter	$\frac{1}{2}$ كوب زبدة مذابة
1 tsp baking powder	١ ملعقة صغيرة خميرة خبز
1 cup coconut	١ كوب جوز هند
almonds	لوز
syrup	شراب مركز
$\frac{3}{4}$ cup water	$\frac{3}{4}$ كوب مياه
2 tbs honey	٢ ملعقة كبيرة عسل

[1] فرن

[2] مكونات

[3] يسكب

[4] يغلي

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We can make delicious mango juice or cocktail juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

- نقوم بطهي الكثير من الأشياء المختلفة، مثل شوربة العدس والبقول المدمس والملوخية. الشيء الذي أفضل خبزه هي البسبوسة. هذه هي طريقة صناعتها (البسبوسة).
أولاً، تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن لتسخينه. ثم قم بوزن المكونات. ثم تخلط السميد مع جوز الهند والسكر والزبدة المذابة. يجب عليك خلط هذه المكونات باليد. أنا أحب فعل هذا! ثم تضيف الزبادي وتسكب المزيج في طبق للخبز. يمكنك استخدام السكين لعمل اشكال ماسية فوق البسبوسة. ضع حبة لوز على كل ماسة. تبدو جميلة للغاية. أخبز البسبوسة في الفرن لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة. اصنع الشراب المحلي. ضع العسل والماء وعصير الليمون في قدر. اغلي المزيج لمدة ١٠ دقائق. اخرج البسبوسة من الفرن. ثم اسكب الشراب المحلي عليها. قطع البسبوسة وشاركها مع عائلتك!

- تنمو ثمار المانجو في مصر. نستطيع صنع الكثير من المشروبات والأطباق بها. فيمكننا إعداد عصير مانجو لذيذ الطعم أو عصير كوكتيل ويمكننا أيضاً إعداد سلطة الفاكهة وكعكة المانجو.

General Exercises | on Lessons 4&5

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My favorite fruit is
a. bananas b. apples c. mangoes d. oranges
- We can make a lot of drinks and with mangoes.
a. shapes b. dishes c. pots d. soup
- I usually use mangoes to make
a. cakes b. ice cream c. fruit salad d. lentil soup
- We have a mango tree in our garden.
a. aunt's b. uncle's c. mother's d. grandpa's

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- all the ingredients in a big bowl by hand.
a. Tidy b. Mix c. Read d. Write
- We use a to make diamond shapes on the top of the basbousa.
a. knife b. cup c. saucepan d. spoon
- My mother uses butter to make basbousa.
a. fast b. melted c. magic d. tired
- the basbousa with your family. [القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣]
a. Share b. Mix c. Pour d. Grab

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

chef - butter - cooking - recipes - ingredients

Hani is my brother. He likes [1] different kinds of food. He wants to be a famous [2] when he grows up. Hani has an interesting cook book. In this book, there are many different [3] Hani's cook book helps him remember the [4] of many delicious recipes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and molokhia. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then, weigh out the ingredients. Then, you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this !

Then, you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "pretty" means " ".
a. lazy b. bad c. beautiful d. angry
2. This text is about
a. Plants we grow b. How to bake basbousa
c. Our school trip d. How to study hard

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How long does it take to bake basbousa ?
.....
4. How can we make diamond shapes on top of basbousa ?
.....

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل.

1. can – delicious – juice – We – mango – make.
.....

2. mix – the – You – by hand – should – ingredients. [الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤]

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

what dishes can you make with apples
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.**

اكتب فقرة انشائية مكونة من حوالي (٣٠) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Your favorite recipe

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- mix
- oven

.....

.....

.....

.....

Identify the general idea of the text

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة العامة بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Mangoes grow in Egypt. My uncle grows mangoes on his farm. We also have a mango tree in front of our house. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with mangoes. We can make delicious mango juice or cocktail juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake. Mango is delicious and healthy.



- The text is about "" .
- Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "" .
- Or : The text talks about "" .
- Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

- a. Basbousa b. Mangoes c. Honey d. Oranges

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

This is how you make basbousa. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then, weigh out the ingredients. Then, you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. Then, you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

- The text is about "" .
 - Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "" .
 - Or : The text talks about "" .
 - Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
- a. Koshari b. Chocolate
c. Ice cream d. Basbousa

2

Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

some → [اسم لا يعد] / [جمع]	تستخدم في الجمل المثبتة تستخدم في جمل العرض والطلب
any → [اسم لا يعد] / [جمع]	تستخدم في الجمل المنفية والسؤال
How about → [inf. + ing]	تستخدم للاقتراح وبعدها الفعل مضاف له [ing]
Are there any → [اسم جمع]	تستخدم للسؤال عن [اسم جمع]

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 I would like [any] lemons.	some	الجملة مثبتة
2 Would you like [any] lemons ?	some	عرض
3 Are there [some] books ?	any	سؤال
4 How about [read] a book ?	reading	نستخدم [inf. + ing] بعد [How about]

Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 [Is] there any oranges ?	Are	.....
2 Can I have [any] water ?	some	.....
3 I don't have [some] grapes.	any	.....
4 How about [have] rice for lunch ?	having	.....
5 There is [any] salad.	some	.....

◀ اكتب التصحيح

1 I'd like [any] cheese.	.....	الجملة مثبتة
2 There aren't [some] books on the table.	.....	الجملة منفية
3 Can I have [any] tea, please ?	.....	طلب
4 [Is] there any tomatoes ?	.....	كلمة [tomatoes] جمع
5 How about [go] to the park ?	.....	نستخدم [inf. + ing] بعد [How about]

3

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1	doesn't - Dina - fish - like.
2	have - We - tree - a mango.
3	eggs - collects - He - fresh.
4	some - like - I - would - carrots.
5	an old - met - Jack - man.
6	sad - very - The hen - looked.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
I	love	chocolate.
		fish.
	would like	
		very sad.

٢ الجملة الأمرية

1	Go - market - the - to .
2	by - the ingredients - Mix - hand.
3	the basbousa - Bake - the - in -the oven.
4	tree - down - Don't - the - cut.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
Don't	sell	our last cow.

٣ الجملة الاستفهامية

1	food - Do - grow - you ?
2	some - you - Would - like - oranges ?
3	you-How often-do-food-eat-healthy ?
4	any - Do - have - you - carrots ?
5	favorite - your - What - is - food ?

1	2	3	4	5
What	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
What	would	you	like ?	
	do			

4

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٧ جملة].

1 My favorite food

I love chocolate^[1]. I like to eat it for dessert, but chocolate isn't healthy if we eat it a lot^[2]. I also like chicken and fish^[3]. They are healthy food^[4]. They're good for our bodies^[5]. My mother buys them at the market^[6].

2 My favorite recipe

We cook lots of things^[7]. My favorite thing is koshari^[8]. I buy the ingredients at the market^[9]. I use lentils and rice to make it^[10]. It is a very delicious dish^[11]. It is not easy to cook it^[12]. My mom helps me make it^[13].

3 Mangoes

Mangoes grow in Egypt^[14]. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it^[15]. We can make delicious mango juice^[16]. I usually use mangoes to make fruit salad^[17]. My sister likes mango cakes^[18]. Mango is healthy^[19]. My uncle has a mango tree in his garden^[20].

4 How to make basbousa

I like basbousa^[21]. Yesterday, my mom helped me make basbousa^[22]. I mixed the semolina, coconut, sugar and butter together^[23]. I poured the mixture into a baking dish and baked it^[24]. I used a knife to make diamond shapes on the top^[25]. Then I poured the syrup over it and shared it with my family^[26]. It was very delicious^[27].



TEST YOUR SKILLS

We plant our food



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

- 1 Read and complete the following dialog with the words in the box.

healthy - chocolate - favorite
- chicken - market

Enas : What's your [1]
food, Donia ?

Donia : It's [2] But
it's unhealthy.

Enas : Do you like [3]
food ?

Donia : Yes, I like [4]
fish and mangoes.

Enas : Do you have any mango
trees in your garden ?

Donia : Yes, I do.

2. We have got [any]
vegetables.

3. This is [an]
beautiful plant.

My Writing

- 3 Write a paragraph of about
[30-40] words about "Your
favorite dish"

My Language

- 2 Read and write the correct
form of the word[s] between
brackets.

1. Have we got
[some] milk ?

My Project

- 4 Make a poster about a fruit or
vegetable that grows in Egypt.

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on Unit 1

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

beans	فول
coconuts	جوز الهند
lemons	ليمون [أصفر]
limes	ليمون حامض [أخضر]
onions	بصل
pineapple	ثمرة الأناناس
yogurt	زبادي
boil	يغلي
french fries	بطاطس مقلية
shopping list	قائمة التسوق
pour	يصب / يسكب
knife	سكين
mixture	خليط
almonds	لوز
ingredients	مكونات

Phonics

• Short vowels

candy - mango - milk - fish

• Long vowels

cake - lime - play - bean

• Some words sound the same but have different spellings

/eI/ - rain - play - cake - gray

Language

Countable and uncountable nouns

• الاسماء المعدودة والغير معدودة

1 a - an

◀ تستخدم [a/an] قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد.

- a mango - an apple

2 some - any

◀ تستخدم [any / some] مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة و الاسماء غير المعدودة.

- some juice/apples - any rice/onion

◀ تستخدم [some] في الإثبات وحالة العرض والطلب.

- ▶ - I have some oranges.
- Would you like some ice cream ?

◀ تستخدم [any] في حالة النفي والاستفهام.

- ▶ - I don't have any water.
- Do you have any sugar ?

Test 1 on Unit 1

- نصوص الاستماع
- في نهاية الكتاب.
- التقييمات الشهرية
- في نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My favorite thing to bake is
a. cake b. basbousa c. bread d. cookies
2. You need to turn on the to get it hot.
a. television b. light c. oven d. computer
3. Mix the semolina,, sugar and melted butter.
a. almonds b. flour c. eggs d. coconut
4. Pour the over the basbousa and cut it.
a. syrup b. juice c. milk d. tea

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A is a very big person.
a. giant b. recipe c. castle d. child
2. We can keep animals and birds in a
a. bowl b. school c. cage d. cupboard
3. The is very sharp, so it cuts the meat easily.
a. spoon b. knife c. cup d. glass
4. After making the, we pour it over the basbousa.
a. lentil soup b. tea c. syrup d. salad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

make – vegetables – cake – cocktail – grow

Our teacher asked us to make a poster about our favorite fruits. My poster was about mangoes. Mangoes [1] in Egypt. We can [2] a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We can make delicious mango juice or [3] juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

In Egypt, farmers grow many kinds of food. There are vegetables and fruits. I like carrots, potatoes and onions. There are also many kinds of fruits such as mangoes, bananas and pineapples. Fruits and vegetables are healthy.

My grandpa has a farm. He grows rice, tomatoes and lemons. I always help him when I have a holiday. My grandpa raises chickens, too. I like to feed them. My mom makes us delicious recipes with vegetables and fruits.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "delicious" means
a. bad b. scary c. tasty d. horrible
2. Fruits and vegetables are
a. healthy b. unhealthy c. expensive d. terrible

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does grandpa grow ?
.....

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل.

1. like – would – Younis – lunch – for – meat.
.....

2. There – tomatoes – aren't – any – the fridge – in.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. Please, can I have [a] apple ?

2. Do you have [some] carrots ?

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

there are some apples, tarek.
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة انشائية مكونة من حوالي [٣٠] كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Healthy and unhealthy food

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What's your favorite healthy food ?
 - Why is chocolate unhealthy ?
-
.....
.....
.....

Test 2 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Fruits grow in
a. Egypt b. London c. Italy d. China
[الجيزة / العجوزة ٢٠٢٤]
- My grandfather has a
a. drink b. food c. farm d. ball
- He grows trees.
a. mango b. orange c. lemon d. apple
- He collects fresh
a. mangoes b. apples c. fish d. eggs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The farmers use a/an to cut the wood.
a. axe b. pen c. car d. stick
[المنيا / ملوى ٢٠٢٤]
- It's to have balanced diet.
a. bad b. healthy c. sad d. cold
[البحيرة / إدكو ٢٠٢٤]
- We grow in our garden.
a. eggs b. mangoes c. chocolate d. koshari
[الغربية / بسيون ٢٠٢٤]
- What's your favorite ? - Chicken.
a. juice b. food c. drink d. sport
[كفر الشيخ / سيدى غازى ٢٠٢٤]

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

[الإسماعيلية / القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤]

price - buy - rich - special - cow

Jack and his mother were poor. Jack went to sell his [1] in the market. On his way, he met an old man. The man had [2] beans. He wanted Jack to [3] them. He said the beans would make Jack [4] Jack bought the beans at last.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about "Omar's".
a. school b. favorite food c. village d. job
2. Lemon is a kind of
a. candy b. fruits c. vegetables d. nuts

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do farmers raise ?
.....

4. What does Omar's mom make ?
.....

[البحيرة / المحمودية ٢٠٢٣]

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل.

1. favorite – is – healthy – What – food – your ? [بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣]

2. carrots, – like – would – I – some – please . [الشرقية / فاقوس ٢٠٢٣]

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. [Are] there any milk in the bottle ? [المنيا / ملوى ٢٠٢٤]

2. There isn't [some] bread in the kitchen. [أسوان / نصر ٢٠٢٤]

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

- would you like an orange [سوهاج / جرجا ٢٠٢٣]

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة انشائية مكونة من حوالي (٣٠) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Your favorite fruit

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- Why do you like it ?
- What can you make with it ?

[الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٣]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- Chocolate is if we eat it a lot.
[unhealthy - healthy - good]
- I also like and fish.
[soil - chicken - plant]
- My mother buys potatoes at the
[hospital - school - market]

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

some - about - would - thank

- Market seller** : Hello, what [1] you like ?
Mom : I would like [2] carrots, please.
Market seller : Would you like an orange ?
Mom : Yes, of course.
Market seller : How [3] some lemons ?
Mom : No, [4] you.

3 Read and answer the questions.

People have three meals every day, breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon, and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal.

Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to keep healthy. They also advise people to drink a lot of fresh water and practice a sport every day.

A. Answer the following questions.

- Why should we eat lots of vegetables and fruits ?
.....
- What should we drink a lot ?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer.

- We have meals every day.
a. two b. three c. five
- Doctors say that healthy food is
a. expensive b. important c. bad
- Doctors advise people to practice a
a. music b. sport c. reading

4 Choose the correct answer.

- We mangoes in our garden.
a. bake b. grow c. boil d. mix
- means to cut something down.
a. Chop b. Bake c. Pour d. Add
- Are there tomatoes in the fridge ?
a. much b. any c. an d. a
- I'm hungry. Let's make sandwiches.
a. some b. any c. an d. a
- She turned the on before baking the cakes.
a. fan b. oven c. light d. television

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- food - is - favorite - What - your - healthy ?
.....
- fruits - the - He - market - sells - at.
.....
- you - some - Would - juice - like - orange ?
.....
- had - for - yesterday - I - koshari - lunch.
.....
- found - golden - She - a - egg.
.....

I want to be healthy!

أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة!

Aims of Unit Two : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about sports.
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الألعاب الرياضية.
- talk about sports I'm good or bad at.
- أتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية التي أجيدها والتي لا أجيدها.
- read and listen to a science fiction story.
- أقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة خيال علمي.
- learn how to say single-syllable words.
- أتعلم كيف أنطق كلمات ذات مقطع لفظي واحد.
- write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsman.
- أكتب سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية رياضية مصرية مشهورة.
- give a presentation about how to help my local environment.
- أقدم عرض تقديمي حول كيفية مساعدة بيئتي المحلية.



► Listening and Reading
Sports

I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

football
كرة القدمhandball
كرة اليدsquash
لعبة الإسكواشtennis
رياضة التنسswimming
رياضة السباحةsailing
إبحارkarate
رياضة الكاراتيةkung fu
رياضة الكونج فو

• Extra vocabulary

match	مباراة	old	قديم	club	نادي
later	لاحقًا	great	عظيم / رائع	awesome	رائع / مذهش
sports	رياضات	game	لعبة - مباراة	popular	مشهور - محبوب

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

agree يوافق
try يحاول - يجرب

Past

agreed
tried

Irregular

Present

win يفوز
go يذهب

Past

won
went

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

good at [inf. + ing]/(noun) جيد في
bad at [inf. + ing]/(noun) سيء في
Let's + [inf.].... هيا بنا + [مصدر الفعل]

agree to + inf. يوافق أن + [مصدر الفعل]
Me, too! أنا أيضًا!
look fun يبدو ممتعًا
So do I! وأنا كذلك!

There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!
Bubble football is one of these unusual sports.

هناك الكثير من الرياضات غير العادية التي يمكنك تجربتها. إنها ممتعة، وتحافظ على صحتك! كرة القدم الفقاعية هي إحدى هذه الرياضات غير العادية.

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Sports	sports	Seleem and Wael are talking about sports.
	squash match	Wael is watching a squash match.
	tennis	Wael is good at playing tennis.
	playing	Seleem is good at playing squash.
	karate - TV	Seleem loves watching karate and kung fu on TV.
	swimming - sailing	Wael's favorite sports are swimming and sailing.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Football is very in Egypt. Most people love it
a. popular b. bad c. hot d. cold
- My favorite are handball and squash.
a. subjects b. foods c. sports d. desserts
- I play football with my friends at the
a. hospital b. club c. bank d. museum
- My brother was happy because his team the match.
a. tried b. won c. went d. watched

II

Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Seleem and Wael are talking about sports.

Seleem

يتحدث سليم ووائل عن الألعاب الرياضية.



What are you watching ?

ماذا تشاهد ؟

An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini - it's great. I love squash !

مباراة قديمة بين رنيم الوليلي ونور الشربيني - إنها رائعة. أنا أحب الإسكواش !

Wael



Me too! Who's winning ?

وأنا أيضًا ! من سيفوز ؟



• Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly.

- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة.

Raneem - she's very good at playing squash.

رنيم - هي جيدة جدًا في لعب الإسكواش.



I know. What sport are you good at ? أنا أعرف. ما هي الرياضة التي تجيدها ؟

I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball.

أنا جيد جدًا في لعب التنس، لكني سيئ في لعب كرة اليد. وماذا عنك ؟



I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too. أنا جيد في لعب الإسكواش، لكني سيئ في لعب التنس. أنا أحب كرة القدم أيضًا.

So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.

وأنا كذلك، لكني أفضل في لعبة التنس عن كرة القدم. دعنا نذهب ونلعب مباراة كرة قدم.



Yes, let's go to the club later. نعم، دعنا نذهب إلى النادي لاحقًا.

Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV ?

نعم! وما هي الرياضات الأخرى التي تشاهدها على شاشة التلفاز ؟



I love watching karate and kung fu. And you ?

أحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونج فو. وأنت ؟

My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun !

الرياضات المفضلة بالنسبة لي هي السباحة والإبحار. يبدو الإبحار ممتعًا !



Great! So what time do you want to play football ?

عظيم! إذن ما هو الوقت الذي تريد أن تلعب فيه كرة القدم ؟

About five ?

حوالي الساعة الخامسة ؟



Awesome - see you in the club later ! رائع - أراك لاحقًا في النادي !

III Language functions

To talk about sports للتحديث عن الألعاب الرياضية



What sports do we have in Egypt ?
ما هي الرياضات التي لدينا في مصر ؟



We have sports like football, tennis, and swimming.
لدينا رياضات مثل كرة القدم، التنس والسباحة.



Which sports would you like to try ?
ما الرياضة التي ترغبين في تجربتها ؟



I would like to try squash.

أريد أن أجرب لعبة الإسكواش.



What's the most popular sport in Egypt ?
ما هي أكثر الرياضات شعبية في مصر ؟



I think football is the most popular.
أعتقد كرة القدم الأكثر شعبية.



IV Language focus

Remember : Comparative adjectives : تذكر : صفات المقارنة

تستخدم صفات المقارنة عند المقارنة بين اثنين من الأشياء، الأشخاص أو الأماكن.

Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة	
Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة
+ er + than - Nour is taller than Rokaya.	+ more / less + than - Math is more difficult than English.

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة [تُحفظ كما هي] عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective الصفة	Comparative مقارنة بين اثنين
good جيد	better than أفضل من
bad سيء	worse than أسوأ من

► - I'm better at tennis than I am at football.

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

Part 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Ahmed is at football. [القاهرة / حدائق القبة ٢٠٢٤]
a. bad b. good c. terrible d. angry
- Ahmed usually plays football at the
a. club b. garden c. school d. park
- Omar likes watching on TV.
a. movies b. matches c. songs d. birds
- Ahmed and Omar go to the sports club on
a. Mondays b. Sundays c. Fridays d. Saturdays

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We have like football and tennis in Egypt.
a. foods b. sports c. places d. fruits
- My favorite sport is swimming. It fun !
a. watches b. agrees c. looks d. wins
- Ali likes water sports like swimming and
a. squash b. karate c. sailing d. tennis
- My school team the football match easily.
a. won b. went c. cut d. tried

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

good – toys – sports – squash – matches

Wael and Samir are at the same age. They go to their school together. Wael and Samir like different [1] Wael likes football. He always watches football [2] on TV. Samir likes squash. Raneem El Weleily is his favorite [3] player. She is very [4] at playing squash.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- to – club – the – go – Let's – later. [الشرقية / الصالحية ٢٠٢٣]

- is – the most – What – in Egypt – sport – popular ?

• **5 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Sara is my little sister. She is eleven years old. She likes sports a lot. Her favorite sport is squash. She plays it at the club with her friends. She practices squash twice a week. She won many prizes. She wants to be a famous player. My parents help her practice well. She is very clever and active.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. The underlined word "famous" means
a. lazy b. terrible c. bad d. popular
2. She wants to be a famous
a. doctor b. teacher c. engineer d. player

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4. How often does Sara practice squash ?

.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

let's play squash

.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Sports in Egypt

Guiding elements :

- popular
- swimming

[أسوان / إدفو ٢٠٢٤]

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

► An awful nightmare!



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

toxic	سام	awful	مزعج / فظيع	breathing	التنفس
lungs	رئتين	greenhouse	صوبة زجاجية	shade	ظل
emissions	انبعاثات	nightmare	كابوس	dream	حلم / يحلم

• Extra vocabulary

grass	حشائش	dirty	غير نظيف	horrible	مخيف
hospital	مستشفى	gray	لون رمادي	outside	بالخارج
asleep	نائم	plastic	بلاستيك	sitting	الجلوس
factory	مصنع	clean	نظيف	heart	قلب

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present

Past

breathe	يتنفس
wait	ينتظر
stay	يبقى

breathed
waited
stayed

Present

Past

know	يعرف
drive	يقود
swim	يسبح

knew
drove
swam

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- dangerous for
- go on holiday
- even so
- because of
- cut down

- خطر على
- يذهب في إجازة
- مع ذلك
- بسبب
- يقطع

- look after
- keep ... clean
- work hard
- get ready for
- any more

- يعتني بـ
- يبقى ... نظيفًا
- يعمل بجد
- يستعد لـ ...
- لم يعد

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
toxic	very bad to eat or breathe سوء جدًا للأكل أو التنفس
breathe	to move air into and out of your lungs أن ينتقل الهواء لداخل وخارج رئتيك
emissions	gases from cars or factories غازات تنتج عن السيارات أو المصانع
shade	an area which the light of the sun can't reach هي المنطقة التي لا يصل إليها ضوء الشمس
nightmare	a bad dream حلم سوء
greenhouse	a glass building used for growing plants مبنى زجاجي يستخدم لزراعة النباتات



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- are gases from cars or factories.
a. Planets b. Forests c. Emissions d. Cages
- He couldn't sleep well because of a/an nightmare.
a. amazing b. awful c. quiet d. nice
- When the air is, we can't breathe well.
a. fresh b. clean c. toxic d. clear

II

Reading

★ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

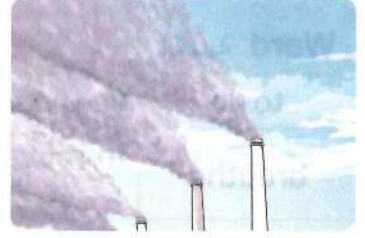
تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and toxic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his breathing.



لا أستطيع التنفس، أنا أعرف ذلك. الهواء أسود و سام. يوجد العديد من الانبعاثات الناتجة عن السيارات. أنها خطيرة على رئة الأطفال ومن ثم نضطر إلى البقاء في المنزل. لم نستطع الذهاب إلى المدرسة في العديد من الأيام لأن الهواء سوء للغاية. فأخي الصغير اضطر إلى الذهاب للمستشفى بسبب مشاكل في التنفس.

I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends - the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black . I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty.



أتذكر عندما كنا نستطيع الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائنا، كانت الحشائش خضراء والسماء زرقاء اللون. حتى أننا كنا نستطيع رؤية الشمس. الآن لم يعد يمكننا حتى رؤية الشمس لأن السماء رمادية اللون أو سوداء. أتذكر الذهاب في العطلة واللعب على الشاطئ مع عائلتي. كنا نسبح في البحر، لكن الآن لا يمكننا السباحة في البحر لأنه يوجد به الكثير من البلاستيك مما يجعله غير نظيف.

Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from greenhouses and we can't sit outside any more. But wait, what's that ? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun.



من الأشياء الأخرى التي أتذكرها هي أننا كنا نأكل الفاكهة من الأشجار ونجلس في ظلها في الأيام الحارة. لكن الآن لقد قاموا بقطع كل الأشجار لذلك نحن نحصل على الفاكهة فقط من الصوبات الزجاجية ولم نعد نستطيع الجلوس بالخارج. لكن انتظر، ما هذا ؟ إنها والدتي تنادي ؛ لقد حان الوقت لأستعد للمدرسة ! وكان كل هذا كابوس مزعج! أنظر للخارج لأرى السماء زرقاء وأستطيع أن أرى الشمس.

We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this !



سنذهب إلى الحديقة اليوم. لكنني أتذكر حلمي وأعرف من داخلي أننا نحتاج إلى أن نعتني بكوننا. يمكننا أن نقلل من قيادة سياراتنا، ونستخدم الدراجات الخاصة بنا أكثر، نزرع الأشجار، ونحافظ على نظافة البحر ولكن يجب علينا أن نعمل بجد على ذلك!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn

1. How was the sky in the nightmare ?

- It was gray or black.

Practice

2. How can we look after our planet ?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- is an area which the light of the sun can't reach.
a. Greenhouse b. Shade c. Beach d. Planet
- Because of the toxic air, he has problems with his
a. writing b. reading c. breathing d. thinking
- is a glass building used for growing plants.
a. Farmhouse b. Greenhouse c. Village d. Factory
- Planting trees can help us our planet.
a. waste b. look after c. throw d. remember

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

lungs – greenhouse – toxic – hospital – emissions

I can't breathe. The air is black and [1] There are too many [2] from cars. It's dangerous for children's [3] and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the [4] because of problems with his breathing.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- planet – look – our – We – after – need – to.

.....

- an – awful – Sara – nightmare – has.

[المنيا / سمالوط ٢٠٢٤]

.....

4 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

What we can do to stop air pollution

Guiding elements :

- protect
- planet

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



I

Vocabulary

taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو	team	فريق
table tennis	تنس الطاولة	chess	شطرنج
drawing	الرسم	French	اللغة الفرنسية
poem	قصيدة	jigsaws	لعبة الصور المتقطعة

go	play	do
swimming sailing fishing	chess football tennis handball the piano	jigsaws karate kung fu taekwondo

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed	speak	يتحدث	spoke
tidy	ينظم	tidied	write	يكتب	wrote
practice	يتدرب	practiced	draw	يرسم	drew
			sing	يغني	sang



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- She likes to jigsaws with a lot of pieces.
a. do b. write c. jump d. sing
- is my favorite sport.
a. Arabic b. Taekwondo c. Kitchen d. Math
- I like pictures of animals.
a. eating b. drawing c. drinking d. speaking
- Monkeys can trees easily.
a. jump b. climb c. tidy d. make

II

Listening and Reading

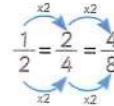
Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball.



Asser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis, but he's bad at helping me in the kitchen!



My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!



III

Language focus

Talking about things we do or don't do well.

التحدث عن أشياء نفعلها أو لا نفعلها بطريقة جيدة.

Subj. + **am** + **great at** رائع في
is + **good at** جيد في
are + **bad at** سيئ في → **inf. + ing / noun**

- ▶ Huda is **good at** playing tennis.
- ▶ I am **good at** tennis, but I am **bad at** doing jigsaws.
- ▶ My brother is **great at** swimming, but he's **bad at** basketball.

Notice : ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل :

◀ عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ [e] [قبلة حرف ساكن] تحذف [e] قبل إضافة [ing] أما إذا كان حرف [e] منطوقاً لا تحذف ويضاف [ing].

write → writing practice → practicing see → seeing

◀ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة [ing] بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد.

swim → swimming sit → sitting

• Help your child know how to use (good at, bad at and great at).

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم "good at", "bad at" و "great at".

- مرحباً، أنا داليا. أنا جيدة في لعب كرة القدم وصناعة الكيك. أنا سيئة في لعب كرة اليد.
- أسر هو أخي. إنه جيد في لعبة التنس ولكنه سيئ في مساعدتي في المطبخ!
- أختي تدعى سلمى. هي جيدة في حل مسائل الرياضيات. وهي سيئة في ترتيب حجرتها.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She is great at [speak] English.
2. My brother [are] good at sailing.
3. What sport are you good [of] ?
4. They can't paint the living room. They're really bad at [paint].
5. My friend is great at [plays] handball.
6. My sister is good [of] art. [الجيزة - بولاق الدكرور ٢٠٢٤]
7. Camels are [good] walking across the desert.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

تدريب تلقائي
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



1. Noha is great at squash.
a. playing b. play c. plays d. played
2. My uncle good at sailing.
a. do b. does c. is d. are
3. She is great table tennis.
a. in b. an c. to d. at

IV Language functions

To talk about favorite sports. للتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة.

1. A : Which are your favorite sports to do on your own ?

١. أي الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة لك التي تحب أن تؤديها بنفسك ؟

B : I like playing squash on my own.

- احب لعب الاسكواش بمفردي.



2. A : Which are your favorite sports to do with others or in a team ?

٢. أي الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة لك التي تحب أن تؤديها مع الآخرين أو في فريق ؟

B : I like playing football in a team.

- احب لعب كرة القدم في فريق.



3. A : Which are your favorite sports to watch on TV ?

٣. أي الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة لك التي تحب أن تشاهدها على التلفاز ؟

B : Swimming is my favorite sport to watch on TV.

- السباحة هي رياضتي المفضلة والتي اشاهدها في التلفاز.



Adding and subtracting decimals.

جمع وطرح الأعداد العشرية.

When you add or subtract decimals, treat them like whole numbers, but move the decimal point at the end so the position matches the numbers. عندما تقوم بجمع أو طرح الأعداد العشرية، تعامل معها كأنهما أعداد صحيحة وضع العلامة العشرية في النهاية بحيث يتطابق الموضوع مع الأرقام.

The position of the decimal point has to match the position in the original numbers.

يجب أن يتطابق موضع العلامة العشرية مع الموضع في الأرقام الأصلية.

For Example :

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ + 8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ - 8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

Solving problems

If one tree is 3.459 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees ?

- لاحظ استخدام كلمة "difference" في المسائل الكلامية التي تعني الفرق بين الأرقام الموجودة أي أننا نقوم بعملية طرح [subtract] (-).
- نقوم باتباع الخطوات السابقة في الحل :

$$\begin{array}{r} 3.459 \\ - 2.753 \\ \hline 0.706 \end{array}$$

Jihan runs 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran ?

- لاحظ استخدام كلمة "total" في المسائل الكلامية والتي تعني مجموع الأرقام الموجودة. أي أننا نقوم بعملية الجمع [add] (+).

$$\begin{array}{r} 3.567 \\ + 5.258 \\ \hline 8.825 \end{array}$$



Pop Quiz on Math

1 Circle the correct answer.

1. $7.983 + 5.432 = 13.415 / 134.15$

2. $9.076 + 8.894 = 1.7970 / 17.970$

2 Find the result.

1. $23.7 + 6.38 = \dots\dots\dots$

2. $93.4 - 66.83 = \dots\dots\dots$

3. $4.28 + 3.56 = \dots\dots\dots$

4. $8.53 - 1.97 = \dots\dots\dots$

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Sami and Kareem like
a. sport b. music c. drawing d. art
2. Sami is at playing the piano.
a. bad b. good c. horrible d. terrible
3. Kareem is good at
a. drawing b. reading c. singing d. writing
4. Kareem is bad at playing
a. volleyball b. football c. tennis d. chess

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

cat – piano – good – climbing – walking

Mazen, Donia and Ali are my cousins. They are interested in animals. Mazen likes camels. Camels are good at [1] across the desert. Donia has a nice [2] Donia called her cat Bella. Bella is [3] at jumping. Ali likes monkeys. Monkeys are good at [4] trees.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Asser is my brother. He is 11 years old. He's good at playing tennis, but he's bad at helping me in the kitchen! My sister's name is Salma. She is 8 years old. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room! Mazen and Reem are my cousins. Reem is good at drawing. She likes cats. Mazen likes monkeys. Monkeys are good at climbing trees.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about ".....".
a. Dalia and her family b. Playing football
c. Cats and monkeys d. Growing plants
2. is good at doing math.
a. Asser b. Salma c. Mazen d. Reem

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is Asser bad at ?
.....

4. What animal does Reem like ?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

[A] 1. at - writing - My sister - good - poems - is.
.....

2. do - I - on - karate - own - my.
.....

[دمياط - عزية البرج ٢٠٢٤]

[B] 1. practices - He - football - in - every day - a team.
.....

2. at - bad - What - you - are - sports ?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

[A]

1. Maged is great at [draws] pictures.

2. Ahmed is bad at [kick] the ball.

[B]

1. Cats [is] good at jumping.

[بنى سويف - الفشن ٢٠٢٤]

2. They're good [on] handball.

6 Punctuate the following.

Nader and maher are good at playing tennis
.....

7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

"Sports you are good at"

Guiding elements :

- football
- practice

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

.....

.....

.....

.....

- Sports places and equipment
- Pronunciation



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



karate suit
بدلة الكاراتية



football boots
حذاء كرة القدم



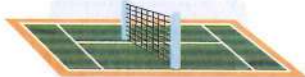
tennis ball
كرة تنس



swimming goggles
نظارة السباحة



squash rackets
مضارب الإسكواش



tennis court
ملعب التنس



football pitch
ملعب كرة القدم



swimming pool
حمام سباحة

• Extra vocabulary

high kicks	ركلات عالية	best	أفضل
kicking a ball	ركل الكرة	moves	حركات
rhyme	يتناغم	walls	حوائط
awesome	رائع	equipment	معدات


Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- He wants to be a football player because he is good at balls.
a. buying b. kicking c. cooking d. practicing
- Football boots and swimming goggles are sports
a. equipment b. robots c. places d. moves
- By practicing karate, he could do lots of
a. poems b. moves c. dishes d. shopping

II

Listening and Reading

★ Listen and look. استمع وانظر.



I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

أنا أحب رياضي - ركل الكرة في الملعب هو الشيء المفضل لي.



Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.

أن أكون في حمام السباحة وأمارس هذه الرياضة هو أفضل شيء بالنسبة لي.



I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best.

أحب الطريقة التي يمكنني من القيام بعمل الكثير من الحركات المختلفة. أكثر ما أحب هي الركلات العالية.



You have to play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast.

يجب عليك أن تلعب في ملعب صغير محاط بحوائط. لديك مضرب صغير تتحرك بسرعة كبيرة.



I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

أعتقد أنها رياضة رائعة وأنا أتدرب كثيرًا في فصل الصيف. فهم لديهم ملاعب تنس في الحديقة وأنا أذهب هناك مع أصدقائي.



★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

- This is what I wear to play football.

هذا ما أرتديه لكي ألعب كرة القدم.



- This is where I play football.

هذا هو المكان الذي ألعب فيه كرة القدم.



- This is where I go swimming.

هذا هو المكان الذي أذهب فيه للسباحة.



- This is what I wear to go swimming.

هذا ما أرتديه لكي أذهب للسباحة.

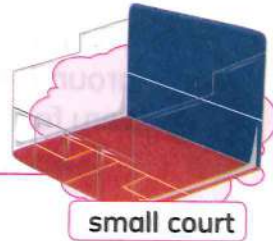
- This is what I use to play squash.

هذا ما أستخدمه لألعب الإسكواش.



- This is where I play squash.

هذا هو المكان الذي ألعب فيه الإسكواش.



- This is what I wear to do karate.

هذا ما أرتديه عندما أمارس لعبة الكاراتيه.

- This is what I do when I do karate.

هذا ما أفعله عندما أمارس رياضة الكاراتيه.



Notes for parents

• Help your child identify sports places, clothes and equipment.

- ساعد طفلك في التعرف على أماكن الرياضات والزي الخاص بها والأدوات الرياضية.

III Pronunciation

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

1 How to count sounds in a word كيفية عد الأصوات في كلمة





- ▶ We count the sounds we pronounce in the words, not the written letters in the words. نحن نعد فقط الأصوات المنطوقة في الكلمات وليس الحروف المكتوبة.
- ▶ When two letter sounds are put together, they can make a new sound: عندما يتحد حرفين معا، ينتج عنهما صوت آخر مختلف.

letters	sound	example
ch	/tʃ/	chips
sh	/ʃ/	fish
ck	/k/	duck
ll	/l/	ball

- ▶ Divide the word into individual sounds so you can count them. قسم الكلمة إلى أصوات مفردة حتى تتمكن من عدّها.

sock → s o ck

How many sounds are there in ?

neck →	n e ck	→ 	"It has 3 sounds."
doll →	d o ll	→ 	"It has 3 sounds."
fish →	f i sh	→ 	"It has 3 sounds."
full →	f u ll	→ 	"It has 3 sounds."

2 Short and long vowels الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والممدودة

- ▶ There are five vowels in English : [a, e, i, o, u]

Short a /æ/	Short e / e /	Short u / ʌ /	Short i / I /	Short o / ɔ: /
hat	pen	nut	sit	dog
cat	egg	cup	fish	pot
Long a / eɪ /	Long e / i: /	Long u / u: /	Long i / aɪ /	Long o / ɒ /
make	tea	cube	cry	rose
pain	feet	fuel	light	cone

3 Syllables

٣. المقاطع

A syllable : is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظي : هو جزء من كلمة تحتوى على صوت متحرك واحد.

A. One-syllable words [single syllable words] : كلمات ذات مقطع واحد :



man رجل



cat قطة



red لون أحمر



sun شمس



pen قلم جاف



sock فردة جورب

B. Two-syllable words :

كلمات ذات مقطعين :

spi der



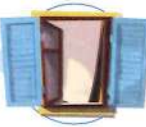
tea cher



pa per



win dow



ro bot



ti ger



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

• Read and tick (✓) the words with long vowel sounds.

1. cry

☐

2. swim

☐

3. so

☐

4. fuel

☐

5. make

☐

6. cube

☐

7. feet

☐

8. hot

☐

9. light

☐

10. pot

☐

11. cone

☐

12. pen

☐

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sara likes
a. sports b. drinks c. foods d. fruits
2. Sara loves kicking a ball in a with her friends.
a. class b. club c. park d. team
3. Dina is good at
a. handball b. karate c. squash d. kung fu
4. Dina is not good at playing
a. taekwondo b. tennis c. volleyball d. football

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I use my to play squash.
a. goggles b. racket c. suit d. sunglasses
2. I like because I can do a lot of moves and high kicks.
a. swimming b. tennis c. squash d. karate
3. I wear my to go swimming.
a. boots b. kicks c. goggles d. rackets
4. We play tennis on a
a. floor b. pitch c. court d. fence

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

angry - beach - strong - swimming - goggles

Doing sports is very useful to our bodies. Sports make us [1] and healthy. My favorite sport is [2] I began to learn swimming when I was seven. I love going to the [3] and swim in the sea. I wear my swimming [4] and train every day in the swimming pool near my house. Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.

[سوهاج - أحميم ٢٠٢٤]

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. go - I - swimming - friends - my - with.
.....

2. is - a ball - Kicking - my - thing - favorite.
.....

• **5 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Football is one of the most popular sports in the world. People like it very much. People play football on pitches. It is one of the most important games in the Olympic Games since 1900. People play football by foot only, but the goalkeeper is the only player who can hold the ball with his hands. People play football in two teams. Each team has eleven players. The winner is the team who scores the most goals in the match.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. The text talks about ".....".
a. Olympic Games b. The world
c. Football d. Games
2. People play football on
a. pools b. pitches c. farms d. courts

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who can hold the ball with his hands ?
.....
4. Summarize the text into one sentence.
.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

yasser wears his boots to play football

[أسيوط - الغنايم ٢٠٢٣]

• **7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Sports equipment

Guiding elements :

- football boots
- karate suit

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- Writing :
a sports biography
► Project



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية	champion	بطل	competitor	مُنافِس
athlete	لاعب رياضي	prize	جائزة	effects	آثار
water pollution	تلوث المياه	biography	سيرة ذاتية	water bodies	مسطحات مائية
amazing	مدهش	wildlife	حياة برية	wastewater	مياه الصرف

• Extra vocabulary

gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	flag	علم	therefore	نتيجة لذلك
polluted	ملوث	moment	لحظة	agricultural	زراعي
training	تدريب	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	sink	حوض
sportsperson	شخص رياضي	organisms	كائنات حية	solutions	حلول
garbage	قمامة	successful	ناجح	cause	سبب / بسبب
harmful	ضار	harm	يؤذي	Moroccan	مغربي [الجنسية]
habitat	بيئة / موطن	paralympic	خاص بأولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة	Rio Olympics	دورة [ريو] للألعاب الأولمبية

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	win	يفوز	won
compete	يتنافس	competed	become	يصبح	became
change	يغير	changed	lose	يفقد - يخسر	lost
avoid	يتجنب	avoided	begin	يبدأ	began
carry	يحمل	carried			
kill	يقتل	killed			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

with special needs	ذوي احتياجات خاصة	compete against	يتنافس ضد
at the age of	في عمر	famous for	مشهور بـ

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Hedaya Malak هداية ملاك	famous - taekwondo	She is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player.
	flag - Olympic Games	She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games.
	bronze	She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics.
	athlete - special	She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs.
Water pollution تلوث المياه	harmful	Water pollution is harmful.
	chemicals	Chemicals that go into rivers and lakes cause water pollution.
	kill - crabs	Polluted water can kill fish, birds and crabs.
	garbage - beach	Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

II Listening and Reading

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ١١ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Who the famous sportsperson is

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing!

من هو الرياضي المشهور

١. هداية ملاك هي لاعبة تايكواندو مصرية مشهورة، وهي واحدة من الشخصين الذين قاموا برفع العلم المصري في دورة الألعاب الأولمبية في طوكيو عام ٢٠٢١. هذا مذهش.



Further information about her sport and her prizes.

2. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

مزيد من المعلومات عن الرياضة التي تمارسها وجوائزها

٢. ولدت هداية في ٢١ أبريل عام ١٩٩٣. لقد بدأت ممارسة التايكوندو في سن السابعة وفازت بالعديد من الجوائز في سن الرابعة عشر. فازت بالميدالية البرونزية في دورة ريو للألعاب الأولمبية عام ٢٠١٦. فازت أيضًا بالميدالية البرونزية في طوكيو عام ٢٠٢١.

Notes for parents

- Help your child to look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

Something else she is famous for

3. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

شيء آخر تشتهر به

٣. هداية شخصية عطوفة جدًا. في عام ٢٠١٦ ساعدت لاعبة رياضية مغربية الجنسية من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة تدعى رجا قرماش. لم يكن لدى رجا أحد للتنافس معه، لذلك أصبحت هداية منافستها وخسرت. ونتيجة لذلك استطاعت رجا الفوز بالميدالية الذهبية وكانت لحظة مميزة جدًا لها.

What Hedaya will do next

4. What does Hedaya do now ? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

ماذا ستفعل هداية فيما بعد

٤. ماذا تفعل هداية الآن ؟ إنها تتدرب بجد. إنها تريد حقًا الفوز بالميدالية الذهبية !

Describe the relationship between ideas.

صف العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. What is Hedaya Malak's sport ?

- Taekwondo.

Practice

2. How could Hedaya help Raja Garmash ?

III

Writing skill

How to write a sports biography.

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن بطل رياضي.

- 1 Introduce the person, giving their name. - قم بتقديم الشخص [معطيًا اسمه]

- [اسم البطل الرياضي] is a famous [اسم الرياضة] player.

- He/She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد.

- She/He began practicing [اسم الرياضة] at the age of [العمر].

- 2 Say why they are famous and give details about their sport.

- اذكر لماذا هم مشهورين وأعط تفاصيل عن رياضتهم.

- She / He was the first

- She / He was / is successful because

- She / He won [many prizes / the bronze medal / the gold medal].

3 Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.
 - قدم تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام.

- He / She is also

- Moreover / As well as this , he/she is

4 Say what you think could happen next for their career.

- قل ما تعتقد أنه سيحدث لهم في حياتهم العملية فيما بعد.

- I think he / she will become the most

★ A sports biography about Sherif Osman

Sherif Osman is a famous Egyptian paralympic champion. He was born in September 15, 1982 in Egypt. He began practicing weightlifting when he was at the university. He won many medals. He won the first medal in 2006. He won gold and silver medals at Paralympic Games.



Sherif Osman
paralympic champion



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

★ Write a biography about your favorite famous person.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to write about his/her favorite famous person.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب عن شخص مشهور مفضل بالنسبة له أو لها.

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Water pollution

تلوث المياه

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

عندما تتسرب المواد الكيميائية الضارة إلى المسطحات المائية مثل الأنهار والبحيرات والبحار، فإننا نسمى هذا تلوث المياه. يمكن أن يقتل تلوث المياه الكائنات الحية التي تعيش في المياه مثل الأسماك والطيور والكابوريا، كما يمكن أن يقتل الطيور التي تأكل الأسماك. ويمكن أن يتسبب تلوث المياه في فقدان الحيوانات لمواطنها وتغيير بيئاتهم.



Causes المسببات

- Wastewater from sinks, toilets, and showers
مياه الصرف من الأحواض ودورات المياه والاستحمام
- Wastewater and chemicals from factories
مياه الصرف والمواد الكيميائية من المصانع
- Wastewater from agricultural land and cities into rivers
مياه الصرف من الأراضي الزراعية والمدن إلى الأنهار



Effects الآثار

- Dirty water can make children and old people ill.
يمكن للمياه الغير نظيفة أن تمرض الأطفال وكبار السن.
- Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.
المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية في الأنهار.



Solutions الحلول

- Save as much water as possible.
- Take shorter showers.
- Avoid running water.
- Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

حافظ على الكثير من المياه بقدر الإمكان.
خذ حمام [دش] أقصر.
تجنب ترك المياه جارية.

لا تلقى أبداً القمامة في أو بالقرب من بحيرة أو شاطئ.

General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo
a. coach b. player c. actor d. nurse
- She carried the Egyptian at the Tokyo Olympic Games.
a. book b. cup c. flag d. belt
- She began practicing at the age of seven.
a. tennis b. football c. taekwondo d. swimming
- She won many
a. books b. stars c. prizes d. cups

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Water pollution has many dangerous
a. flags b. effects c. organisms d. prizes
- Water pollution happens when harmful go into water bodies.
a. prizes b. chemicals c. habitats d. sinks
- Ali likes practicing sports, because he wants to be a famous
a. driver b. athlete c. scientist d. farmer
- Sara wants to the gold medal. [القاهرة - روض الفرج ٢٠٢٣]
a. avoid b. destroy c. win d. lose

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sinks - people - kill - homes - crabs

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can [1] organisms that live in water such as fish, birds and [2] Pollution can cause animals to lose their [3] and change their habitats. Wastewater from [4] , toilets, and showers can cause water pollution.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- can - we - How - make - cleaner - our water ?
.....

- rivers - wildlife - in - Polluted - destroys - water.
.....

• **5 Read the text and answer the questions.**

There are a lot of famous sportspersons in our community. Hedaya Malak and Mohamed Salah are very famous. My cousin Noha likes practicing sports. Her favorite sport is taekwondo. She wants to be an athlete as Hedaya Malak. Hedaya is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. When she was seven, she began practicing taekwondo. She won many prizes at the age of fourteen.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Noha wants to be a/an
a. teacher b. vet c. athlete d. doctor
2. Hedaya Malak is a player.
a. basketball b. football c. tennis d. taekwondo

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is Noha's favorite sport ?

.....

4. What did Hedaya Malak win at the age of 14 ?

.....

[الأفصر - أُرمنت ٢٠٢٤]

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

save as much water as possible

.....

• **7 Write a biography of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A famous Egyptian athlete

Guiding elements :

- compete
- medals

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.



التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة فى النص.



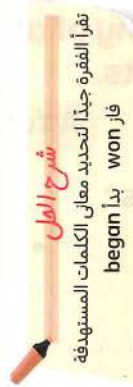
مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة فى تحديد معنى الكلمة، اقرأ النص جيداً وخذم المعنى.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. Hedaya won many important prizes. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.



- The underlined word "won" is the opposite of the word
 a. learnt b. lost c. took d. had
- The underlined word "began" has the same meaning as
 a. started b. finished c. traveled d. carried

Step 2

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

- The underlined word "harmful" means " "
 a. dangerous b. good c. safe d. well
- The phrase "water pollution" means that water isn't
 a. bad b. unhealthy c. clean d. polluted

2

Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء: التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.

• اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

• نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

▶ good/great/bad at → [inf. + ing]	يستخدم بعدهم الفعل مضاف له [ing]
▶ [صفة قصيرة] + er + than	يضاف للصفة er وبعدها than للمقارنة
▶ more/less [صفة طويلة] + than	نضع more أو less قبل الصفة الطويلة وبعدها than
▶ good → better than	صفات غير منتظمة يتغير شكلها
▶ bad → worse than	

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
① I'm good at [play] football.	playing	نستخدم [inf. + ing] بعد [good at]
② He's [good] at tennis than karate.	better	صيغة مقارنته لوجود than
③ English is [most] difficult than Arabic.	more	مقارنة لوجود than وصفة طويلة
④ Mona is [tall] than Ali.	taller	نضيف er لأنها مقارنة لوجود than

Practice

▶ Write the Reason : معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

① She is very bad at [write] poems.	writing	.....
② They are great at [help] their mom.	helping	.....
③ Football is [most] popular than tennis.	more	.....
④ Omar is [bad] at tennis than he is at squash.	worse	.....
⑤ Bikes are [least] expensive than cars.	less	.....

▶ Write the Correction : اكتب التصحيح

① My mom is great at [make] cakes.	.....	نستخدم [inf. + ing] بعد [great at]
② Salma is [fast] than Lara.	.....	نضيف er لأنها مقارنة لوجود than
③ I'm better at tennis [then] I'm at karate.	.....	صيغة مقارنته لوجود [better]
④ She's bad at [do] math.	.....	نستخدم [inf. + ing] بعد [bad at]
⑤ I'm [bad] at doing jigsaws than my sister.	.....	صيغة مقارنته لوجود [than]

3

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1	is - He - playing - at - bad - tennis.
2	watching - I - love - karate.
3	cars - We - can - drive - our - less.
4	good at - is - Mazen - singing.
5	the bronze - won - She - medal.
6	water - Polluted - destroys - wildlife.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
I	love	squash
	can drive	
	is	
	destroys	

٢ الجملة الأمرية

1	shorter - Take - showers.
2	running - Avoid - water.
3	pollute - Don't - rivers.
4	as much - Save - as - water - possible.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
Don't	throw	garbage in lakes.

٣ الجملة الاستفهامية

1	sport - What - good at - you - are ?
2	she - is - Why - important ?
3	did - Who - help - she ?
4	she - What - want - does - the future - for ?

1	2	3	4	5
What	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
What	are	you	watching?	
	are			good at?

4

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة].

1 Sports equipment

I like to play football on the pitch^[1]. I wear my football boots to play with my friends^[2]. My sister always goes swimming in the pool^[3]. She uses her goggles to protect her eyes^[4]. My brother uses his racket to play squash^[5]. We all love sports because they're very good for us.^[6]

2 Famous Egyptian athlete

Hedaya Malak is a very famous Egyptian sportsperson^[7]. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021^[8]. She was born on April 21, 1993^[9]. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven^[10]. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs to win a competition^[11]. She won many prizes^[12].

3 My favorite sport

I love sports^[13]. My favorite sport is swimming^[14]. I'm very good at swimming^[15]. I'm in the school team^[16]! I go swimming in the swimming pool every day^[17]. I always use my goggles when I go swimming^[18].

4 Water pollution

Water pollution is very harmful^[19]. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water^[20]. Wastewater from sinks, toilets, and showers can cause water pollution^[21]. Plastic is very dangerous^[22]. To stop water pollution, never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach^[23]. We must work hard to protect our environment^[24].

TEST YOUR SKILLS

I want to be healthy !



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد فقم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

- 1** Read and complete the following dialog with the words in the box.

tennis – time – playing – sports

Selim : Hello, Wael. What
[1] do you
like to watch ?

Wael : I love watching swimming,
[2] and football.

Selim : So do I, and I'm good at
[3] tennis.

Wael : Let's go to the club and
play later.

Selim : What [4] do
you want to go ?

Wael : About five o'clock.

My Writing

- 3**
- 1. Write a diary of about (30-40) words about "Your favorite sport"**

July, 21st

Dear Diary,

- 2. Write an email to your friend about (30-40) words about "A sport you're good at"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

My Language

- 2** Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. She's bad at [save] her money.

2. My brother is very good at
..... [speak] English.

3. I'm good at [sing] songs.

4. Amr is great [in] kung fu.

5. I'm bad at [draw].

My Project

- 4** Make a poster about water pollution.

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on Unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

squash	رياضة الإسكواش
kung fu	رياضة الكونغ فو
sailing	الإبحار
karate	لعبة الكاراتيه
handball	كرة اليد
football	كرة قدم
tennis	تنس
swimming	السباحة
taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو
athlete	رياضى
chemicals	مواد كيميائية
nightmare	كابوس
squash racket	مضرب الإسكواش
football pitch	ملعب كرة القدم
lungs	رئتين
pollution	تلوث

Phonics

• Short vowels

cup - pot - sit - bat

• Long vowels

cube - rose - feet - cake

• Syllables

a. one-syllable words

red - neck

b. two-syllable words

robot - teacher

Language

• Talking about things we do or don't do well.

التحدث عن أشياء نفعلها أو لا نفعلها بطريقة جيدة.

great at رائع فى
good at جيد فى
bad at سيئ فى

→ inf. + ing / noun

► - I'm very good at playing football, but I'm very bad at sailing.

- He's great at drawing.

Test 3 on Unit 2

- نصوص الاستماع
- فى نهاية الكتاب.
- التقييمات الشهرية
- فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sherif Osman is a famous
a. trader b. doctor c. athlete d. actor
2. He can compete in important
a. festivals b. competitions c. classes d. markets
3. He wants to win new in the future.
a. medals b. flags c. clothes d. books
4. His sport is
a. tennis b. taekwondo c. weightlifting d. swimming

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My feet are too large for these football
a. goggles b. boots c. rackets d. pitches
2. I put on my swimming and jumped into the pool.
a. rackets b. goggles c. socks d. poems
3. We can't practice tennis at school because we don't have
a tennis
a. habitat b. pool c. court d. farm
4. Water pollution can wildlife in rivers.
a. avoid b. win c. protect d. destroy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

goggles – karate – pitch – pool – kicks

I love playing sports. When I play football on the [1], I kick the ball with my friends. My brother's favorite sport is swimming. He always uses his [2] when he goes to the pools. My little sister is good at [3] She does a lot of moves and she does high [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was born in 1993. When she was seven, she began practicing taekwondo. She won many prizes at the age of fourteen. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She is practicing hard because she wants to win a gold medal.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian player.
a. karate b. taekwondo c. football d. basketball
2. The underlined word "won" is the opposite of ".....".
a. lost b. started c. watched d. liked

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is Hedaya practicing hard ?
.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sports – in Egypt – What – have – do – we ?
.....

2. or – throw – Never – garbage – in lakes – beaches.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. She's bad at [write] stories.
2. My brother is very good at [speak] English.

7 Punctuate the following.

i don't go to school on Fridays
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Water pollution

Guiding elements :

- harmful
- chemicals

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 4 on Unit 2

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- is important for us to breathe and live.
a. Air b. Water c. Ocean d. Gas
- We go to the hospital when we breathe air.
a. clean b. good c. fresh d. toxic
- The air can get dirty because of the of cars.
a. emissions b. fuel c. engines d. wheels
- Toxic air is dangerous for children's
a. eyes b. lungs c. legs d. stomach

[الشرقية / شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Too many from cars can cause pollution. [الفيوم / يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٤]
a. greenhouses b. shades c. emissions d. jigsaws
- A nightmare is a bad
a. meal b. place c. dream d. man [الجيزة / اوسيم ٢٠٢٤]
- She needs a to hit the tennis ball with it. [كفر الشيخ / سيدى غازى ٢٠٢٤]
a. pitch b. court c. suit d. racket
- She is good at sports. She is a famous [الغربية / شرق المحلة الكبرى ٢٠٢٤]
a. athlete b. doctor c. vet d. teacher

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

prizes – born – seven – Egyptian – player

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She carried the [1] flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games. She was [2] in 1993. When she was [3], she began practicing taekwondo. She won many [4]

[بنى سويف / الفشن ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Water pollution is a type of pollution where different bodies of water such as rivers, lakes, and seas can be dirty because of harmful chemicals. There are many causes of water pollution such as wastewater from sinks, toilets and showers. Some big factories throw harmful chemicals into the water and make it dirty.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. The underlined word "dirty" is the opposite of ".....".
a. famous b. toxic c. polluted d. clean
2. Lakes, rivers and seas are of water.
a. toilets b. bodies c. showers d. sinks

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

4. How can factories cause pollution ?
.....

[القاهرة / النزهة ٢٠٢٣]

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. pollution – dangerous – Water – very – is.

[الوادي الجديد / الداخلة ٢٠٢٣]

2. prizes – many – She – won – year – last.

[الدقهلية / غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٣]

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. My sister is good at [make] food.

[الدقهلية / طالخا ٢٠٢٤]

2. I am good at [read] English.

[المنيا / بني مزار ٢٠٢٤]

7 Punctuate the following.

i'm good at football
.....

[السويس / جنوب ٢٠٢٣]

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A sport you like

Guiding elements :

- What do you wear to do it ?
- Where do you do it ?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

[الغربية / شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٣]

B. Choose the correct answer.

- Ali plays football with his friends on
a. Sunday b. Monday c. Friday
- Aya is good at
a. tennis b. squash c. taekwondo
- Ali's friends play football on the
a. playground b. court c. pitch

4. Choose the correct answer.

- A is a bad dream.
a. greenhouse b. nightmare c. climate d. cage
- Hedaya Malak won the bronze at the Rio Olympics.
a. medal b. necklace c. shoes d. book
- I'm very good at English.
a. speak b. speaks c. speaking d. spoke
- My uncle good at sailing.
a. does b. is c. do d. are
- It was raining so the football was wet.
a. goggles b. pitch c. suit d. racket

5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- look - We - our - planet - after - need to.
.....
- is - good - tennis - at - He - playing.
.....
- air - very - Toxic - is - dangerous.
.....
- sport - is - karate - My - favorite.
.....
- wear - football - They - play - boots - to.
.....

1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

- I like to play on the pitch.
[basketball - football - swimming]
- My sister always goes in the pool.
[running - swimming - laughing]
- My brother uses his to play squash.
[goggles - racket - glasses]

2. Read and complete the dialogue.

football - club - Where - good

A : What sport are you [1] at ?

B : I'm good at [2]

A : [3] do you play it ?

B : At the [4] with my friends.

A : How about playing together ?

B : That's great!

3. Read and answer the questions.

Ali, Aya and Marwa like sports. Ali likes football. He plays it with his friends on Friday. They play football on the pitch. His team always wins. Marwa likes swimming. She goes to the swimming pool every day. She wears goggles when she swims. Her friends like her because she is kind and clever. She helps her friends all the time. Aya is a good squash player. Her racket is red and white. They are good players. They advise all people to practice sports.

A. Answer the following questions.

- What sport does Marwa like ?
.....
- Why do Marwa's friends like her ?
.....

How do I look ?

كيف أبدو ؟

Aims of Unit Three : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.. أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الملابس.
- listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation. أستمع إلى محادثة عن تحزيم حقائب السفر من أجل الإجازة.
- practice using the infinitive of purpose. أتدرب على استخدام صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن غرض ما.
- read a traditional folktale. أقرأ حكاية شعبية تقليدية.
- learn how to say past simple endings /d/ , /t/ , and /Id/. أتعلم كيف أقول نهايات الماضي البسيط /d/ , /t/ , و /Id/.
- multiply multi-digit numbers. أقوم بعملية ضرب الأرقام المتعددة.
- write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives. أكتب وصف عن الملابس المفضلة لدى مستخدما الصفات.
- research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world. أبحث وأصنع منشورا عن الملابس التقليدية من جميع أنحاء العالم.





I

Vocabulary

► Key vocabulary



sweater سترة



T-shirt تي شيرت



coat معطف



pajamas بيجامة



scarf وشاح



sunglasses نظارة شمسية



sneakers حذاء رياضي



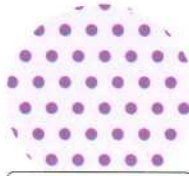
necklace قلادة/ عَقْد



suitcase حقيبة سفر



striped مخطط



spotted منقط



galabeya جلابية



swimming shorts شورت للسباحة [مايوه]

► Extra vocabulary

uniform	زي موحد	gold	ذهبي / ذهب	comfortable	مريح
sunny	شمس	exciting	مشوق/رائع	stripes	خطوط
trip	رحلة قصيرة	shopping mall	مركز تسوق	excited	متحمس
cool	منعش / بارد	Al Fayoum	مدينة الفيوم	holiday	عطلة / إجازة
pearl	لؤلؤة	natural	طبيعي	man-made	يدوي [من صنع البشر]

Did you know ?

Cotton grows in the Nile Delta.

Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world.

- ينمو القطن في دلتا النيل.

- يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن القطن المصري هو أفضل قطن في العالم.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
pack يرتب / يحزم أمتعته	packed	give يعطى	gave
wait ينتظر	waited	wear يرتدى	wore
remember يتذكر	remembered	know يعرف	knew

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

walk around يتجول	come on هيا / تقدم / أسرع
in the evenings في أوقات المساء	on your feet في قدميك
for ages منذ وقت طويل	I can't wait. لا أتحمل الانتظار.

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Our trip to Al Fayoum	Al Fayoum	Asser and his mom will go to Al Fayoum.
	pack - suitcase	They need to pack their suitcases for their holiday.
	sneakers	They will walk around a lot so Asser will need his sneakers.
	gold - necklace	Mom will take her gold necklace.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- At bedtime, I put on my
a. answer b. shoes c. pajamas d. suitcase
- She puts on her and gloves in winter.
a. shorts b. coat c. T-shirt d. sunglasses
- He packed his clothes in a small for the weekend.
a. sweater b. pencil case c. suitcase d. sharpener
- She likes to wear gold around her neck.
a. necklaces b. sunglasses c. T-shirts d. shoes
- My school is very nice.
a. galabeya b. uniform c. necklace d. eye
- My pajamas are very I like wearing them.
a. bad b. comfortable c. hard d. poor

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

II

Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Asser and his mom are packing their suitcases to go to Al Fayoum.



Asser, we need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

آسر، نحتاج إلى أن نحزم حقائبنا لقضاء اجازتنا غدًا.

It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

هذا أمر مشوق للغاية! لا أتحمل الانتظار للذهاب إلى مدينة الفيوم لرؤية العم حاتم والعمة ملك. وبالطبع فارس و دينا.



I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

أنا أعرف. أنا متحمسة لرؤيتهم أيضًا. نحن لم نراهم منذ وقت طويل! لكن هيا، نحن بحاجة لحزم أمتعتنا!

OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

حسنًا، أريد أن أحزم في الحقيبة التي شيرت الأخضر وشورت السباحة [المايوه] الخاص بي لأن لديهم حمام سباحة جميل، أليس كذلك؟



Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

نعم، وتذكر نظارتك الشمسية. سيكون الجو مشمس جدًا.

Will I need a coat and a scarf?

هل سأحتاج إلى معطف ووشاح؟



No, Asser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

لا، يا آسر، لن تحتاج لذلك. لكن يجب أن تحزم شترة. لأنه من الممكن أن يكون الجو بارد في أوقات المساء.

OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

حسنًا. سأحزم شترتي الزرقاء. انها المفضلة بالنسبة لي.



You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

سنحتاج إلى حذاءك الرياضي لأننا سنتجول كثيرًا و ستحتاج إلى ارتداء شيء مريح في قدميك.

What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

ماذا عن أفضل جلابية لدى؟ هل سأحتاج إلى تلك الجلابية التي أعطتني إياها جدي؟



Note: We use "will + inf." to talk about future actions.

يستخدم (will + inf.) بمعنى «سوف» للتحدث عن أحداث مستقبلية.



No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

لا، لن تحتاج إليها. لكنني سأأخذ العقد الذهبي الخاص بي.

Hmm. OK. What else do I need ? Oh, I know! My pajamas!
I'll take the ones with the stripes. They're really cool !

مممم. حسناً. ماذا أحتاج أيضاً ؟ آه، أعلم! بيجامتي ! سأأخذ تلك التي بها خطوط. إنها حقاً لطيفة !



Narrator : 1

Speaker : Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought some striped pajamas.

Narrator : 2

Speaker : Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.

Narrator : 3

Speaker : Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.

Narrator : 4

Speaker : Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.

III Language functions

1 To express the need for doing something :

١ . للتعبير عن الحاجة لفعل شيء ما :

I need to + inf. مصدر الفعل



I need to pack my green T-shirt. أريد أن أحزم التي شيرت الأخضر الخاص بي.

2 Imperative form صيغة الأمر

٢ . باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل Inf.



Come on, we need to pack our suitcases for the holiday.

هيا، نحتاج إلى أن نحزم أمتعتنا للإجازة.



That's exciting!

هذا أمر مشوق [رائع] !



1. Help your child learn how to express the need for doing something.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يعبر عن الحاجة لفعل شيء ما.

2. Help your child use the imperative form.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة الأمر.

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Nesma has two
a. brothers b. sisters c. aunts d. friends
- Youssef bought some striped
a. shorts b. pajamas c. T-shirts d. shoes
- Nesma went to the
a. shopping mall b. school
c. park d. office
- Wael wore a and a spotted scarf.
a. coat b. necklace c. sweater d. suitcase

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I bought nice to wear on my feet.
a. sunglasses b. sneakers c. suitcases d. coats
- I always wear my to protect my eyes from the sun.
a. sweater b. coat c. sunglasses d. suitcase
- She wears a gold around her neck. [الشرقية / بلبيس ٢٠٢٣]
a. necklace b. bracelet c. dress d. glass
- I bought new swimming to swim in the pool.
a. coats b. scarfs c. umbrellas d. shorts

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

blue - sunglasses - T-shirt - pack - back

I'm Noha. I'll (1) my suitcase for our holiday tomorrow. I'm excited. I need to pack my green (2) I won't need a coat, but I should take my (3) to protect my eyes. I'll pack my (4) sweater. It's cool at night.

[الفيوم / طامية ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Omar, Rania, and Hazem are friends. They are at the same age. They will visit Al Fayoum next Friday. They are very excited to go there. They need to pack their suitcases for the holiday. Omar will need his sneakers



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

belt	حزام	sleeve	كُم	hidden	مخبأ - مخفي
crown	تاج	costume	زِي [تنكري]	Egyptian clothing	الملابس المصرية
pocket	جيب	gloves	قفازات	robe	رداء / ثوب
galabeya	جلابية	cotton	قطن	popular	محبوب / شائع

• Extra vocabulary

traditional	تقليدي	wedding	حفل زفاف	Eid	العيد
colorful	ملون	pattern	نمط / شكل	suit	بدلة
grades	درجات	princess	أميرة	social media	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي
useful	مفيد	festival	احتفال	cardboard	ورق مقوى / كرتون

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

celebrate
borrow
search

يحتفل
يستعير
يبحث

Past

celebrated
borrowed
searched

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get sunburned	يصاب بحروق شمس	looks really cool	تبدو لطيفة جدًا
do a school project	يقوم بمشروع بحثي مدرسي	from the outside	من الخارج
		looks like	يشبه
		ask for help	يطلب المساعدة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Egyptian clothing	galabeya - robe	The galabeya is a long white robe.
	made - cotton	The galabeya is made from cotton.
	long - sleeves	The galabeya has long sleeves.
	hidden	The pockets of galabeya are hidden.

II

Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz

تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Fares is talking to his friend Thomas on social media about clothes.



Hi, Fares. Can you help me ? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?

مرحبًا يا فارس. هل بإمكانك مساعدتي ؟ أقوم بعمل مشروع بحثي مدرسي عن الملابس المصرية. هل تستطيع أن تعطيني بعض المعلومات ؟

Hi, Thomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know ?

مرحبًا يا توماس. نعم، بالطبع. ماذا تريد أن تعرف ؟



Well, what do you usually wear ? حسنًا، ماذا ترتدي عادة ؟

I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

أعيش في سوهاج وهنا عادة ما يكون الجو حارًا جدًا. اليوم أنا أرتدي شورت وتي شيرت.



Cool ! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes ?

رائع! هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن بعض الملابس التقليدية المصرية ؟

Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular.

أوه، بالتأكيد. حسنًا، يرتدي الكثير من الرجال الجلابية. إنه رداء أبيض طويل ويحظى بشعبية كبيرة.



Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

نعم، لقد رأيت ذلك. يبدو ارتداء هذا رائع حقًا.

Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned !

نعم، إن الجلابية رائعة لأنها مصنوعة من القطن. عادةً ما يكون لونها أبيض، لكن يمكنك الحصول على ألوان أخرى أيضًا. الأكمام طويلة حتى لا نتعرض لحروق الشمس!



Are there pockets?

هل يوجد جيوب بها ؟

Yes ! But they're hidden - you can't see them from the outside.

نعم! لكنها مخفية - لا يمكنك رؤيتها من الخارج.



• Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly.

- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة.



Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival ?

هل ترتدون الجلابية عند الاحتفال بمناسبة مميزة ؟

We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.



نفعل ذلك، والملابس التي ترتديها للعيد، على سبيل المثال، تكون جميلة جدًا. يمكن أن تكون ملونة. أحيانًا يوجد عليها أشكال جميلة.



Thanks, Fares. That's really useful !

شكرًا يا فارس. هذا مفيد حقًا !

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn

1. What's the weather like in Sohag ? It's

a. hot

b. rainy

c. cold

d. snowy

Practice

2. Galabeya is a kind of clothes in Egypt.

a. expensive

b. modern

c. traditional

d. bad

★ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

1. Marwa is wearing a spotted dress with a belt. There are two pockets.

١. مروة ترتدي فستانًا منقط به حزام. يوجد جيبن في الفستان.

2. Reem is wearing a costume. She looks like a princess ! She has a crown on her head.

She has white gloves on her hands.

٢. ريم ترتدي زي تنكري. هي تشبه الأميرة! لديها تاج على رأسها. وقفازات بيضاء في يديها.



III

Listening script

Narrator : 1

Speaker : I went to town to buy a beautiful new dress for the party.

Narrator : 2

Speaker : I got some cardboard paper to make my poster.

Narrator : 3

Speaker : I searched on the internet to find the information for my homework.

Narrator : 4

Speaker : I bought a scarf and gloves to keep me warm.

Notes for parents

* Help your child to look at the picture and read the sentences.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ الجمل.

IV Language Focus

1 Infinitive of purpose استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

Usage : We use [to + infinitive] to express purpose, and to say why someone does something.

- نستخدم [مصدر الفعل + to + inf.] للتعبير عن الغرض من القيام بفعل شيء أو ذكر سبب قيام شخص ما بفعل شيء ما.

Examples :



She went to town **to buy** a dress.
هي ذهبت إلى المدينة لتشتري فستان.

He went to the club **to play** football.
هو ذهب إلى النادي ليلعب كرة القدم.



2 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation : التكوين

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

A. Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

عند التحويل لزمن الماضي يضاف (ed) لمعظم الأفعال المنتظمة look → looked
لاحظ قواعد إضافة (d / ed / ied) للفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

الفعل المنتهي بـ	يضاف له	مثال Example
e [بعض الأفعال]	+ d	invite → invited
y [صوت ساكن]	+ ied حذف [y]	carry → carried
y [صوت متحرك]	+ ed	stay → stayed
[صوت ساكن يسبقه صوت متحرك]	+ ed يضاعف الحرف الأخير	stop → stopped

B. Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة تحفظ كما هي مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
buy يشتري	bought	get يحصل على	got
leave يغادر	left	drink يشرب	drank
sleep ينام	slept	catch يمسك/يلحق	caught
swim يسبح	swam	make يصنع	made
feed يطعم	fed	do يفعل	did

⚡ **لاحظ أن :** يتم استخدام [verb to be] في زمن الماضي كالآتي :

I / He / She / It / فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't
We / They / You / فاعل جمع → were / weren't

Key words كلمات دالة

in the past في الماضي
ago منذ
yesterday أمس
in + سنة ماضية [2000]

last
→ year السنة الماضية
→ month الشهر الماضي
→ week الأسبوع الماضي
→ Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي

Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. My mom [cook] pasta yesterday.
2. Hala left the party to [caught] her train.
3. He goes to the market to [buying] some rice.
4. I went to the cinema and [watch] the new film last week.
5. She used the internet to [doing] a project.
6. I [get] a new phone a week ago. [القليوبية - قليوب ٢٠٢٤]
7. My teacher uses a red pen [for] correct homework.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

تدريب تلقائي
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

1. Mary listened to her teacher carefully to the lesson.
a. understanding b. understands c. understand d. understood
2. My grandpa to Alexandria last week.
a. traveling b. traveled c. travels d. travel
3. She is going to travel to England learn English.
a. to b. of c. on d. for
4. I to the market with my mom yesterday.
a. gone b. go c. went d. goes
5. I went to the bookshop to a book.
a. buy b. buys c. buying d. bought

General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Samar and Aya are in the today.
a. school b. park c. hospital d. bank
2. Samar is wearing a blue with white flowers on it.
a. tie b. dress c. skirt d. shirt
3. Aya is wearing a on her head.
a. scarf b. cap c. hat d. coat
4. They are sitting on the and having a picnic.
a. chair b. grass c. table d. cage

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Galabeya is a long white [بورشعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٣]
a. belt b. costume c. robe d. shirt
2. The queen has a very nice on her head.
a. packet b. crown c. robe d. belt
3. Galabeyas have ,but they are hidden.
a. gloves b. crowns c. sleeves d. pockets
4. Reem is wearing on her hands.
a. gloves b. belts c. trainers d. glasses

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

cotton - Eid - comfortable - sunburned - robe

My grandfather is a farmer. He gets up early to work on his farm. My grandfather likes wearing something [1],so he always wears a galabeya. His galabeya has long sleeves ,so he doesn't get [2] Galabeya is made from [3] My grandfather usually wears a very beautiful galabeya for [4]

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the kitchen - I - a cake - went to - make - to.
.....

2. a racket - Tarek - tennis - bought - play - to.
.....

• **5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. Hani [buying] some new books to read last week.
2. I wear the new dress to [celebrating] Sham El-Nessim.

• **6 Read the text and answer the questions.**

I am Sandy. I live in Aswan. It's usually very hot in summer and very cold in winter. I like to wear comfortable clothes. I like to wear cotton dresses in summers. Cotton is soft and comfortable. In winter, I wear a scarf, gloves and a coat to **keep** warm. I like to wear sneakers when I go to the park as I walk around.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Sandy likes to wear clothes.
a. modern b. comfortable c. cheap d. traditional
2. The underlined word "**keep**" in the text means
a. cut b. leave c. stay d. take

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Sandy wear to keep warm ?
.....

4. Why does Sandy like cotton clothes ?
.....

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

[كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٣]

why did Tarek make a suit
.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Clothes

Guiding elements :

- cotton
- sleeves

- ▶ The elves and the shoemaker
- ▶ Pronunciation
- ▶ Math



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

elves	أقزام [شخصيات خيالية]	perfect	ملائم / مثالي	beautiful	جميل
honest	أمين / صادق	leather	جلد [صناعي مذبوغ]	workshop	ورشة عمل
tired	متعب	shoemaker	صانع أحذية	kindness	عطف

• Extra vocabulary

wife	زوجة	meal	وجبة	little	صغير / قليل
money	نقود	tonight	الليلة	amazed	مدهش
delicious	لذيذ	quickly	بسرعة	enough	كاف
surprised	مدهش / متفاجئ	kind	عطوف	new	جديد
poor	فقر	amazing	رائع - مدهش		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يصدق	believed	cut out	يقطع	cut out
dance	يرقص	danced	pay	يدفع	paid
describe	يصف	described	hide	يختبئ	hid
thank	يشكر	thanked	feel	يشعر	felt

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

pair of	زوج من	find out	يكتشف
call to	ينادي على	once upon a time	ذات مرة [في يوم من الأيام]
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	try on + clothes	يقيس ملابس
for the night	لمدة ليلة واحدة		
all over the land	من شتى بقاع الأرض		

لاحظ أن كلمة (elves) مفردتها (elf) وتعني (قزم) وهو مخلوق خيالي له أذنان مدببة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The elves and the shoemaker	wife - poor	The shoemaker and his wife were very poor.
	pair of shoes	The shoemaker found a beautiful pair of shoes in the workshop.
	elves	The shoemaker and his wife saw two little elves that made the beautiful shoes.
	new - thank	The shoemaker and his wife made new clothes to thank the elves.

II Listening and Reading

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

The Elves and the Shoemaker الأقزام وصانع الأحذية

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

The Beginning

Once upon a time, a kind and **honest**^[1] shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very **poor**^[2], but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

في يوم من الأيام، كان يعيش صانع أحذية طيب وأمين في مدينة مع زوجته. لقد كانوا فقراء للغاية، ولكن كانوا سعداء. كان صانع الأحذية يعمل بجد لكنه لم يكن لديه مال.

One night, the shoemaker was in his **workshop**^[3]. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the **leather**^[4] now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

وذات ليلة، كان صانع الأحذية في ورشة العمل الخاصة به وقال "يا إلهي، لدي فقط جلد يكفي لزوج واحد من الأحذية. لكنني متعب جدًا لصنعه الليلة. سأقطع الجلد الآن وأصنع الحذاء في الصباح." فقام صانع الأحذية بتقطيع الجلد وذهب للفرش.



[1] أمين

[2] فقير

[3] ورشة عمل

[4] جلد [صناعي]

[5] مندهش

The Middle

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them?" His wife looked **surprised**^[5]. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

في الصباح التالي، لم يصدق صانع الأحذية ما رأيته عيناه. فنادى زوجته كي تأتي مسرعة إلى ورشة العمل. فقال صانع الأحذية "انظري إلى هذا الحذاء! هناك، كان يوجد على منضدته زوج مذهش من الأحذية. نظرت زوجته بدهشة وقالت "إنه جميل. هل صنعتهم؟" فقال "لا يا عزيزتي، أنا لم اصنعهم".

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such amazing shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He **tried on**^[6] the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a delicious meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must **find out**^[7] who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's **hide**^[8] tonight and see who is helping us."

ثم دخل إلى المحل رجل وقال "لم أر قط مثل هذا الحذاء المدهش. هل يمكنني أن أقوم بقياسه؟" فقام بقياس الحذاء وقال "انهما مناسبين لي." ودفع لصانع الأحذية ثمنه. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية "بسرعة، اذهب واشترى المزيد من الجلد." ذهب صانع الأحذية لشراء المزيد من الجلد. وعندما وصل إلى البيت كانت قد أعدت الزوجة له وجبة لذيذة. فقال "سأقطع الجلد ثم آتي لتناول الطعام." فقطع صانع الأحذية الجلد لزوجين من الأحذية وغادر ورشة العمل لهذه الليلة. وفي صباح اليوم التالي، فوجئ صانع الأحذية وزوجته برؤية زوجين من الأحذية الجميلة في ورشة العمل. فقالت زوجة صانع الأحذية "يجب أن نعرف من يصنع هذه الأحذية. لنختبئ الليلة ونرى من يساعدنا."

The End

That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little **elves**^[9]! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must **thank**^[10] the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

The next night, the elves found their new clothes.

They were so happy that they **danced**^[11] around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes.

Soon, people came from **all over the land**^[12] to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

في تلك الليلة، قام صانع الأحذية بتقطيع الجلد ثم اختبأ. لقد أصيبوا بالدهشة عندما رأوا اثنين من الأقزام الصغار! بدأ الأقزام بصنع الأحذية وسرعان ما صنعوا زوجين آخرين من الأحذية الجميلة. فقالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "يجب أن نشكر الأقزام. دعنا نصنع لهم ملابس جديدة." وفي الليلة التالية وجد الأقزام ملابسهم الجديدة، وكانوا سعداء جدًا حتى أنهم رقصوا في أرجاء ورشة العمل قبل أن يجلسوا ليصنعوا المزيد من الأحذية. وسرعان ما أتى الناس من شتى بقاع الأرض لشراء أحذية صانع الأحذية. لم يعد هو وزوجته فقراء وعاشوا في سعادة أبدية.



Make logical inferences.

قم بعمل استنتاجات منطقية.

Learn

1. Why do you think the shoemaker and his wife were kind ?
- I think they were kind because they made new clothes for the elves.

Practice

2. Why do you think the elves helped the shoemaker ?

Remember

What's an adjective ? ما هي الصفة ؟

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be. الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتي بعد [verb to be]

- ▶ The adjectives make the story interesting. إضافة الصفات إلى القصة تجعلها شيقة.
- ▶ The adjectives give more details and help us know if something is positive or negative.

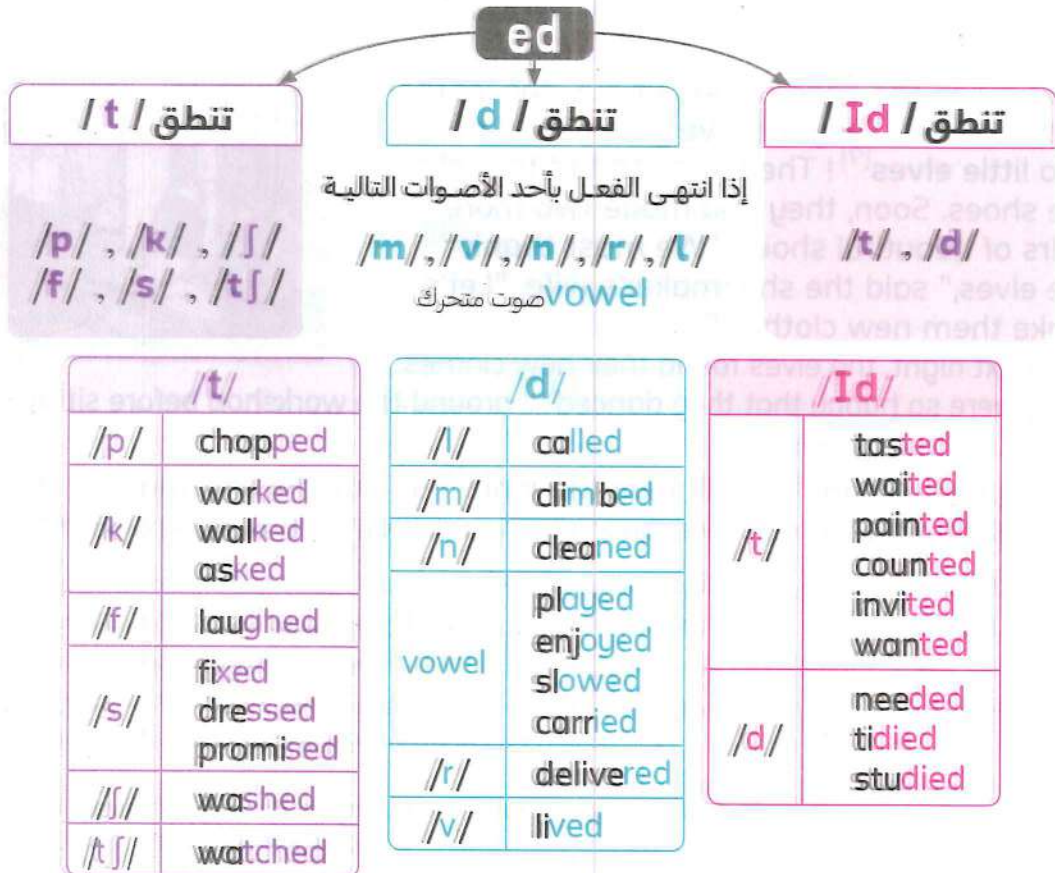
تعطينا الصفات المزيد من التفاصيل وتساعدنا على معرفة ما إذا كان هذا الشيء إيجابياً أم سلبياً.

- ▶ - He is a **kind** and **honest** shoemaker.

III Pronunciation

★ The pronunciation of verbs ending with [-ed] in the past simple tense. كيفية نطق [-ed] في نهاية الفعل المنتظم في زمن الماضي البسيط.

كيفية نطق (ed) في نهاية الأفعال



• Help your child to know what an adjective is.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف ما هي الصفة.

Notice :

- ١ كلمة [live] تنتهي بحرف [e] ولكنه لا ينطق بل آخر صوت نطقه هو /v/ .
 ٢ كلمة [laugh] تنتهي بـ [gh] ولكننا نطقهم كصوت /f/ .
 ٣ كلمة [climb] تنتهي بحرف [b] ولكنه صامت لا ينطق بل آخر صوت نطقه هو /m/ .



Pop Quiz on pronunciation

► Read and write.

~~cleaned~~ - lived - needed - studied - washed - worked

/d/	/t/	/Id/
cleaned

IV Math

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

1 Multiply multi-digit numbers. ضرب أعداد متعددة الأرقام.

- $10 \times 10 = 100$
- $30 \times 20 = 600$
- $50 \times 50 = 2500$
- $38 \times 24 = 912$

Note :

If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero. عند الضرب في العدد صفر، تكون الإجابة صفر.

2 Multiplication in a word problem.

Nora makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week.
How many hats can she make in 48 weeks ?

The solution : $48 \times 25 = 1200 \text{ hats}$



Pop Quiz on Math

1 Multiply.

- $10 \times 30 =$
- $32 \times 45 =$
- $24 \times 56 =$
- $21 \times 41 =$

2 Read, think, and solve.

For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order ?

The solution : \times =

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- There are many workers in the
a. recipe b. workshop c. cage d. suitcase
- We had a/an meal. It tasted good.
a. delicious b. harmful c. dirty d. awful
- My shoes are made of
a. cotton b. leather c. glass d. wood
- The makes us bags and shoes.
a. doctor b. engineer c. farmer d. shoemaker

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shoes - wife - amazing - workshop - meals

Ali is a kind and honest shoemaker. He lives with his [1] in a town. Ali works hard in his [2] He cut out the leather to make beautiful pairs of [3] Ali's wife helps him a lot. She always takes these pairs of shoes and sells them to people from all over the land. Many people buy these shoes and say they are [4] [الوادي الجديد - الخارجة ٢٠٢٤]

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- made - delicious - The shoemaker's - a - meal - wife.
.....

- found - clothes - The elves - their - new.
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

- The shoemaker used the leather to [made] new shoes.
- They made new clothes to [thanking] the elves.

5 Punctuate the following.

the shoemaker and his wife are thankful
.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

smart	أنيق	light	فاتح اللون	tie	رابطة عنق [كرافتة]
school uniform	زى مدرسى	checked	على شكل مربعات	Mexico	دولة المكسيك
short-sleeved	قصير الكم	feast	عيد	sombrero	قبعة من الجوخ [مكسيكية]
Mexican	مكسيكي [الجنسية]	pale	فاتح / شاحب	dark	داكن [اللون]

• Extra vocabulary

trousers	بنطلون	celebration	احتفال	style	نمط
colorful	ملون	vest	سترة	silver	فضة
bright	زاهي / لامع	linen	كتان	leaflet	منشور / نشرة [إعلانية]
skirt	تنورة [جيبية]	socks	جوارب	light	فاتح اللون

II

Listening and Reading

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Student A

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.



أنا حقًا أحب الزي المدرسي الخاص بنا. كل منا يرتدى قميص أبيض ذو كم قصير. وترتدى الفتيات جيبية زرقاء اللون والأولاد بنطلون أزرق اللون. علينا جميعًا أن نرتدى جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلد سوداء. إن الجو ليس باردًا جدًا هنا، ولكن عندما يكون باردًا يمكننا أن نرتدى السترة الزرقاء الخاصة بنا.

Student B

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.



في المدرسة، أرتدى قميص أزرق فاتح وبنطلون أزرق غامق. علينا أن نرتدى رابطة عنق يوميًا. لونها أزرق غامق وعليها خطوط لونها أزرق فاتح. الفتيات في مدرستي أيضًا يلبسون قميص أزرق فاتح اللون ولكن لا يرتدون بنطلون، فهم يرتدون جيبية بها مربعات زرقاء وبيضاء. الفتيات غير مضطرين أن يرتدين رابطة العنق.

Student C

Our school uniform is really smart.
We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie.
We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

الزى المدرسى الخاص بنا حقاً أنيق. علينا أن نرتدى قميص أبيض ورابطة عتق حمراء. ونرتدى جيبه لونها رمادى داكن وچاكيت أزرق.



Student D

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.



- فى مدرستى يختلف الأولاد عن الفتيات فى الزى المدرسى. يرتدى الأولاد شورت لونه أخضر فاتح وجوارب حمراء طويلة. نحن نرتدى قميصاً أبيض ولدينا ستره حمراء داكنة اللون نرتديها عندما يصبح الجو بارد. الزى المدرسى لأختى مختلف فهو يرتدى جيبه زرقاء وتى شيرت أصفر اللون.

Student E

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. I like my uniform!

- الزى المدرسى الخاص بنا هو جيبه زرقاء داكنة للفتيات أو شورت أزرق داكن للذكور، قميص قطني أزرق فاتح وجوارب بيضاء وحذاء أسود. عندما يكون الجو بارداً نرتدى سترات لونها أزرق داكن أو معاطف. أنا أحب الزى المدرسى الخاص بى!

III

Language Focus

Adjectives order

ترتيب الصفات

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way :

عندما نستخدم صفات، نضعهم بهذه الطريقة :

1	2	3	4	
Size	Age	Color	Material	Noun
مقاس	العمر	اللون	المادة الخام	الاسم
big	old	green	cotton	dress

► - I wear a cotton shirt.

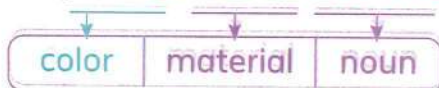
material	noun
المادة الخام	الاسم

• Help your child know how to use adjectives.

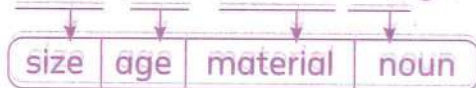
- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف نستخدم الصفات.

تستخدم [commas] الفواصل السفلية (,) بين أكثر من صفة عند ترتيب الصفات.

- She likes wearing **white, cotton clothes**.



- She bought a **small, new, leather bag**.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

► Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He wore his [linen, blue] shirt yesterday.
2. We have a [green, big] suitcase.
3. She wore a [cotton, green] dress.
4. He had to wear an [orange, old] hat.
5. Dad bought me a [white, new] galabeya.

IV Writing skill

How to write a description of your favorite clothes.

كيفية كتابة وصف للملابس المفضلة بالنسبة لك.

- My favorite clothes are : الملابس المفضلة بالنسبة لي هي
- I have a , which is : أنا لدى ، والتي تكون
- I also like : أنا أيضًا أحب
- They are my favorite because : هذه الملابس مفضلة بالنسبة لي لأنها

Example :

My favorite clothes are T-shirts. I have a new, green, cotton T-shirt, which is cool. I also like sneakers. They're my favorite because they are comfortable.

• Help your child learn how to write a description of his/her favorite clothes.

- ساعد طفلك في تعلم كيفية الكتابة عن وصف الملابس المفضلة بالنسبة له/لها.

★ Read and learn clothes of different countries.



Japan دولة اليابان



India دولة الهند



Finland دولة فنلندا

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

ماذا تسمى القبعة المكسيكية ؟ What is the Mexican hat called ?

Clothes in Mexico الملابس في المكسيك

These girls are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts and celebrations.

هؤلاء الفتيات يرتدون الفساتين المكسيكية التقليدية. انظروا! إنها ملونة للغاية. هناك الكثير من الخطوط الملونة على الفساتين. ترتدي الفتيات في المكسيك فساتين مثل هذه خلال الأعياد والاحتفالات.



Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

الفتيات المكسيكيات يحبون الألوان الزاهية. حتى عندما لا يكون هناك احتفالات، فإنهم يرتدون ملابس زاهية وملونة.



People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero - it's a traditional Mexican hat.

يرتدى الناس في المكسيك قبعات لحماية وجوههم من أشعة الشمس. هذه تسمى سومبريرو - إنها قبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.



There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

هناك الكثير من الأشكال المختلفة لقبعة السومبريرو. بعضها بها خطوط، وبعضها ملون جدًا. حتى أن البعض عليه ذهب وفضة.



Notes for parents

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الملابس في دول مختلفة. Help your child to read and learn about clothes in different countries.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص. Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Our school is smart.
a. playground b. uniform c. library d. bag
- We have to wear a blue tie.
a. spotted b. cotton c. striped d. checked
- In winter, we wear dark blue
a. shoes b. sweaters c. shorts d. dresses
- In summer, we can wear green
a. jackets b. vests c. shorts d. gloves

(الغربية - فوة ٢٠٢٣)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- He wore a with stripes around his neck.
a. vest b. tie c. skirt d. shirt
- Girls like wearing colorful dresses during
a. feasts b. sailing c. sleeping d. swimming
- I like your style. You look great.
a. terrible b. smart c. bad d. plastic
- The sombrero is a traditional Mexican
a. skirt b. hat c. jacket d. dress

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Girls in Mexico are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. They wear them during feasts and celebrations. Mexican girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear hats to **protect** their faces from the sun. It is called sombrero. It's a traditional Mexican hat. There're lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have got stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have got gold and silver on them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The general idea of the text is about "..... in Mexico".
a. Food b. Clothes c. Schools d. Celebrations
- The underlined word "**protect**" means
a. cut b. waste c. save d. hurt

B. Answer the following questions.

- What is a sombrero ?

.....

4. What are the different styles of sombrero ?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

(A)

1. are - My - clothes - shirts - cotton - favorite. [الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٣]

2. green, - She - dress - wears - cotton - a new,

(B)

1. wearing - The Mexican - beautiful - dresses - are - girls.

2. leather - He - black, - shoes - made - new,

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The shoemaker made [leather , small] shoes.

2. I bought a [green, new] jacket for the party.

6 Punctuate the following.

we wear jackets when it's cold

[كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤]

7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Clothes in Mexico

Guiding elements :

- colorful
- sombrero

Make logical inferences from the text

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

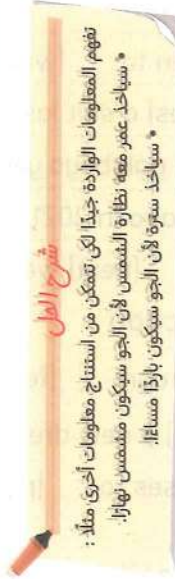
التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في وضع استنتاج منطقي لبعض المعلومات وقد تكون الإجابة غير موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيدًا لأن الإجابة قد تكون موجودة بشكل مباشر في النص وتكون استنتاج للمعلومات الواردة.

Step 1

Read and learn how to answer:

I'm Omar. I need to pack my suitcases for my holiday tomorrow. I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum. I need to pack my sunglasses to wear them during the day. I need to pack my sweater to wear it in the evenings. I'll need my sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot.



1. Do you think the weather can be cold in the evenings in Al Fayoum?

- Yes, because Omar needs to pack his sweater.

2. Is it sunny during the day in Al Fayoum?

- Yes, because Omar will wear sunglasses during the day.

Step 2

Read and answer the questions :

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

1. Do you think students have any clothes to wear when it gets cold ?

2. Do you think the boys and girls have the same uniform ?

2

Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.
- نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Review

to → [inf. مصدر الفعل]	للتعبير عن الغرض نستخدم to وبعدها مصدر الفعل
Subj. فاعل → [التصريف الثاني للفعل]	في [الماضي البسيط] نستخدم [التصريف الثاني]
in the past - ago - yesterday - in [سنه ماضيه] - last	كلمات داله على زمن الماضي البسيط

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 I went to the town to [bought] a suit.	buy	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد [to]
2 They [go] to the park yesterday.	went	لوجود yesterday
3 Last night, I [call] my friend.	called	لوجود last
4 I went to the library [tomorrow].	yesterday	لوجود went في زمن الماضي البسيط

Practice

Write the Reason : معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة		
1 Heba used a pen to [wrote] her essay.	write	.....
2 Tarek [makes] a suit last month.	made	.....
3 I [wear] my galabeya yesterday.	wore	.....
4 She [is] in Cairo in 2021.	was	.....
5 I saw a show [next] week.	last	.....
Write the Correction : اكتب التصحيح		
1 I go to my bedroom [for] sleep.	.....	نستخدم to للتعبير عن الغرض
2 Asmaa [buy] a new dress last week.	.....	زمن الماضي البسيط لوجود last
3 I wear sunglasses to [protected] my eyes.	.....	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد to
4 She went to the kitchen [making] a cake.	.....	نستخدم to وبعدها المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض
5 They [are] at the cinema 3 hours ago.	.....	الجملة ماضى بسيط لوجود [ago]

3

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

الجملة الخبرية

1	need - We - our suitcases - to pack.
2	can't - I - wait - my uncle - to see.
3	will - I - necklace - take - my gold.
4	really - are - They - cool.
5	doing - am - I - project - a school.
6	are - Galabeyas - always - white.
7	had - The shoemaker - money - no.
8	a blue - wear - The girls - skirt.
9	like - I - school - my - uniform.

1 فاعل	2 فعل	3 باقي الجملة
I	will pack	my sweater.
	can't wait	
	are	
	am doing	

الجملة الاستفهامية

1	I - Will - a coat - need ?
2	I - do - What - need ?
3	does - Why - need - Asser- a sweater ?
4	you - Can - me- help ?
5	do - What - wear- you ?
6	he - did - Why - go to - the town ?
7	them - Did - make - you ?
8	did - How - they - feel ?
9	try - I - Can - them ?

1 كلمة استفهام	2 فعل مساعد	3 فاعل	4 فعل	5 باقي السؤال
What	are	they	doing ?	
			need	
				me ?

4

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤] جملة.

1 My favorite clothes

I love wearing different styles of clothes^[1]. I have a lot of colorful dresses, but my favorite is the blue dress^[2]. It has two pockets^[3]. I love wearing it during the celebrations^[4]. I also love wearing gloves on my hands with the dress^[5].

2 School uniform

In my school, everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt^[6]. We wear white socks and black leather shoes^[7]. The boys wear trousers^[8]. They're dark blue with light blue stripes^[9]. The girls wear a dark blue skirt^[10].

3 Egyptian traditional clothes

Many men in Egypt wear the galabeya^[11]. Galabeya is a long white robe^[12]. Galabeya is made from cotton^[13]. The sleeves are long so people don't get sunburned^[14]. It has hidden pockets^[15]. Galabeya can be colorful^[16]. There are sometimes beautiful patterns on it^[17].

4 Clothes in Mexico

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun^[18]. They wear a sombrero^[19]. It's a traditional Mexican hat^[20]. Sombrero has lots of different styles^[21]. Girls wear traditional Mexican dresses^[22]. There are lots of colorful stripes on their dresses^[23]. Mexican girls love bright colors^[24].

TEST YOUR SKILLS

How do I look ?



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My speaking

- 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

pack - need - exciting -
swimming shorts - sunglasses

Mom: We [1] to pack
our suitcases for our holiday
tomorrow.

Ali : OK, I need to pack my
[2] because our
friends have a lovely pool,
don't they ?

Mom: Yes, and remember your
[3] It will be very
sunny.

Ali : Will I need to [4]
my galabeya ?

Mom: No, you won't.

My Language

- 2 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. We wear [cotton,
new, black] trousers.

2. I bought swimming shorts to
..... [wearing] in the
summer holiday.

3. He went to the bakery to
..... [buys] some bread.

4. Last week, we [visit]
our grandpa.

My Writing

- 3 Write an email to your friend
of about [30-40] words about
the galabeya.

From	<input type="text"/>
To	<input type="text"/>
Subject	<input type="text"/>
<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 100px; margin-top: 5px;"></div>	

My Project

- 4 Make a leaflet about traditional
clothes in your country.

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on Unit 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

T-shirt	تى شيرت
sunglasses	نظارة شمس
coat	معطف
scarf	وشاح
sweater	سترة
sneakers	حذاء رياضى
necklace	قلادة
pajamas	بيجامة
elves	أقزام
honest	أمين / صادق
shoemaker	صانع أحذية
smart	أنيق
uniform	زى موحد
short-sleeved	قصير الكم
stripes	خطوط طولية
sombrero	قبعة من الجوخ [سومبريرو]

Pronunciation

كيفية نطق (ed) فى نهاية الأفعال

ed		
تنطق /t/	تنطق /d/	تنطق /Id/
إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد الأصوات التالية /p/, /k/, /t/ , /f/, /s/, /tʃ/	إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد الأصوات التالية /m/, /v/, /n/ , /r/, /l/ vowel متحرك	إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد الأصوات التالية /t/, /d/
/t/ asked	/d/ delivered	/Id/ tasted

Language

1 Infinitive of purpose.

١. استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض.

to + inf.

◀ تستخدم [to + inf.] للتعبير عن الغرض أو ذكر السبب.

- - They went to the library to read some books.
- Injy used a pen to write her essay.

2 The Past Simple Tense.

٢. زمن الماضى البسيط.

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject التصريف الثانى للفعل + الفاعل

- - We played football yesterday.
- He bought a new coat last week.

Test 5 on Unit 3

- نصوص الاستماع
- في نهاية الكتاب.
- التقييمات الشهرية
- في نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Mona goes to the with her sister.
a. school b. party c. park d. hospital
- Mona has gloves on her hands.
a. white b. black c. green d. red
- Mona has a on her head.
a. coat b. crown c. hat d. scarf
- Mona is wearing a dress.
a. spotted b. red c. striped d. black

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- The of the galabeya are long so we don't get sunburned.
a. pockets b. colors c. sleeves d. stripes
- He wears in the swimming pool.
a. coats b. skirts c. shorts d. jackets
- The pockets of my dress are You can't see them from the outside.
a. new b. old c. hidden d. colorful
- In hospitals, doctors wear on their hands to protect themselves.
a. gloves b. ties c. hats d. belts

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sombrero - styles - traditional - celebrations - robe

People from different countries wear different styles of clothes. In Egypt, men wear galabeyas. Galabeyas is [1] Egyptian clothes. The galabeya is a long white [2] In Mexico, people wear a [3] It's a traditional Mexican hat. There are lots of different [4] of sombrero.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I live in Sohag. Many men wear the galabeya. It's made from cotton. It's usually white. The sleeves are long. There're pockets in it, but they are hidden. We can wear galabeya for Eid.

Eid is a special celebration for us. So we all bought new clothes to celebrate it. My father bought a new galabeya to wear for Eid. My sister bought a spotted dress and white shoes. I bought a white shirt and blue trousers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "new" is the opposite of
a. dark b. huge c. old d. bright
2. My sister's dress is
a. spotted b. striped c. plain d. black

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the writer buy for Eid ?
.....

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. in - He - lives - a town - his wife - with.
.....

2. sunglasses - to - protect - my eyes - I - need.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Amr wore his comfortable sneakers to [walked] around easily.
2. Malak drinks water from her [plastic, green] bottle.

7 Punctuate the following.

they lived happily ever after
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Our school uniform

Guiding elements :

- striped tie
- blue trousers

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6 on Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

[كفر الشيخ / شرق كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤]

- Our school uniform is
a. ugly b. bad c. smart d. dirty
- The boys wear green shorts.
a. light b. dark c. long d. small
- We've got a dark red for when it gets cold.
a. jeans b. sweater c. shorts d. hat
- We play football with our at school.
a. teachers b. friends c. family d. fathers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- People wear sweaters and in cold weather. [الإسكندرية / وسط ٢٠٢٤]
a. goggles b. shorts c. coats d. rings
- I wear my to protect my eyes from the sun. [بنى سويف / ببا ٢٠٢٤]
a. scarf b. galabeya c. swimming shorts d. sunglasses
- He packed his clothes in a small [الجيزة / شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤]
a. kettle b. pot c. suitcase d. pencil case
- In my school, boys and girls wear [الجيزة / العجوة ٢٠٢٤]
a. robes b. galabeyas c. sleeves d. uniforms

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

[البحيرة / المحمودية ٢٠٢٤]

week - mall - smart - cotton - help

Heba wears a new dress . It looks nice. She bought it last [1]
She bought it from the shopping [2] It is colorful. It has stripes. It
is made of [3] It is really [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money. One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning", he said. The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed. The following morning, he found an amazing pair of shoes. Who made it ? He didn't know.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. The shoemaker was a man.
a. big b. kind c. hot d. small
2. The shoemaker cut the to make shoes.
a. leather b. bed c. shop d. town

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did the shoemaker live ?
.....
4. Who lived with the shoemaker ?
.....

[الإسماعيلية / القصاصين ٢٠٢٣]

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. at - do - What - you - wear - school ? [القاهرة / الشروق ٢٠٢٣]
.....
2. makes - shoemaker - The - in his - shoes - workshop. [الجيزة / أوسيم ٢٠٢٣]
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I [visit] my grandfather yesterday. [دقهلية / منية النصر ٢٠٢٤]
2. I went to the tennis court to [playing] tennis. [قنا / نقادة ٢٠٢٤]

7 Punctuate the following.

there are many types of clothes

[كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٣]

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your favorite clothes

Guiding elements :

- What are your favorite clothes ?
- Why do you like them ?

[المنيا / مطاى ٢٠٢٣]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. People in Mexico wear hats to their faces.
[heat - protect - see]
2. The is a traditional hat.
[watch - bracelet - sombrero]
3. There are lots of different of sombrero.
[parts - faces - styles]

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

pack - shorts - excited - sweater

Mom : Nour, we need to [1] our suitcases for the holiday.

Nour : It's so [2] I will pack all my clothes.

Mom : Yes, and remember your swimming [3]

Nour : Will we go swimming ?

Mom : Yes, there is a lovely pool there.

Nour : Will I need to pack my [4] ?

Mom : No, it won't be cold.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Girls in Mexico wear colorful dresses during feasts and celebrations. Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero, it's a traditional Mexican hat. There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. Why do Mexican people wear hats ?
2. What do Mexican girls wear during festivals ?

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Mexican girls love colors.
a. dark b. light c. bright
 4. Sombrero is a traditional
a. shirt b. dress c. hat
 5. Some sombreros are very
a. high b. colorful c. cheap
- #### 4 Choose the correct answer.
1. She wears a around her neck.
a. necklace b. bracelet c. dress d. belt
 2. Remember to take your to protect your eyes.
a. sunglasses b. hat c. T-shirt d. shorts
 3. I went to the market some vegetables.
a. buy b. buys c. to buy d. bought
 4. The students bought a nice present to their teacher.
a. learn b. feed c. wait d. thank
 5. Sameh his exam last week.
a. to pass b. passing c. passed d. pass

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. cut - a knife - She - apples - to - used.
2. The - and - is - kind - shoemaker - honest.
3. wear - galabeyas - Do - summer - you - in ?
4. my - I - school - like - uniform.
5. your - What - favorite - are - clothes?

Review 1 | on Units 1, 2 & 3

I Vocabulary

• Unit 1

coconuts	جوز الهند	seed	بذرة	shopping list	قائمة تسوق
limes	الليمون اخضر	recipe	وصفة طهي	beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا
pineapples	أناناس	ingredients	مكونات	cage	قفص
giant	عملاق	castle	قلعة	syrup	شراب السكر

• Unit 2

sailing	إبحار	jigsaws	لعبة تكوين الصور المتقاطعة	nightmare	كابوس
karate	رياضة الكاراتيه	tennis court	ملعب تنس	athlete	لاعب رياضي
kung fu	رياضة كونج فو	football pitch	ملعب كرة قدم	special needs	احتياجات خاصة
taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو	table tennis	تنس الطاولة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
squash rackets	مضارب الإسكواش	swimming goggles	نظارة السباحة	club	نادي

• Unit 3

sweater	سترة	crown	تاج	leather	جلد [صناعي مذبوغ]
pajamas	بيجامة	gloves	قفازات	feast	عيد
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	sleeve	كُم	pale	فاتح
spotted	منقط	elves	أقزام	sombrero	قبعة مكسيكية
striped	مخطط	shoemaker	صانع أحذية	school uniform	زي مدرسي
belt	حزام	workshop	ورشة عمل	colorful	ملون

Unit 1

▶ Countable and uncountable nouns

a - an - some - any

نستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفرد المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن. [a sport]

نستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفرد المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك. [an apple]

نستخدم "some" مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة في الإثبات وفي حالتي العرض أو الطلب.

نستخدم [any] مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة في حالتي النفي والاستفهام.

▶ - Are there any tomatoes ? - Would you like some oranges ?

Unit 2

Comparative adjectives

Regular
adjectives

happy



happier than

tall



taller than

Irregular
adjectives

good



better than

bad



worse than

▶ Talking about things we do or don't do well.

التحدث عن أشياء نفعلها بطريقة جيدة أو سيئة.

great at
good at
bad atرائع في
جيد في
سيء في

[inf. + ing] / noun

Unit 3

1 Infinitive of purpose

استخدام [المصدر + to] للتعبير عن الغرض.

to + inf.



He went to the club to play tennis.

2 The past simple tense



التصريف الثاني للفعل

- We played tennis yesterday.
- I bought a new jacket last week.

3 When we use adjectives, we order them in this way.

عندما نستخدم صفات ، نرتبهم بهذه الطريقة.

1	2	3	4	
Size مقاس	Age العمر	Color اللون	Material المادة الخام	Noun الاسم
big	old	green	cotton	dress

General Exercises | on units 1, 2 & 3

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- At the top of the beanstalk, Jack saw a
a. park b. hospital c. castle d. school
- Jack saw a very big inside the castle.
a. star b. giant c. animal d. chair
- There was a hen on the
a. floor b. table c. bed d. cage
- Next to the hen were some eggs.
a. wooden b. glass c. plastic d. golden

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- He is kind and All people love him.
a. ugly b. lazy c. honest d. angry
- I had an awful I dreamed that I lost my cat !
a. jigsaw b. nightmare c. drink d. food
- My mom mixed the together to make basbousa.
a. fruit b. ingredients c. vegetables d. beans
- I wear new swimming for my swimming lessons.
a. boots b. goggles c. rackets d. court

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pen - crown - gloves - spotted - princess

Samar and Aya are in a party. Samar is wearing a [1] dress with two pockets. Aya is wearing a costume. She is wearing a [2] on her head. She looks like a [3] ! She is wearing white [4] on her hands.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. did - pack - What - for - you - the holiday ?
.....

2. at - I'm - good - playing - squash.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

- She bought a scarf to [kept] her warm.
- I don't want to buy [some] chocolate.

6 Punctuate the following.

what's Hamza's favorite food
.....

THEME

2

Myself and others



UNIT

4

Looking after
our world

الاعتناء بعالمنا

Aims of Unit Four : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة :

In this unit I will ...

فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث، وأكتب عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة.
- learn about Elephantine Island.
- أتعلم عن جزيرة إلفنتين.
- use sentences in the past continuous.
- أستخدم الجمل فى الماضى المستمر.
- learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- أتعلم وأتحدث عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.
- learn how to say three consonants together.
- أتعلم كيفية نطق ثلاثة أحرف ساكنة معاً.
- learn to correct spelling mistakes.
- أتعلم تصحيح الأخطاء الإملائية.
- write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- أكتب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.



- My visit to Elephantine Island
- What were you doing ?
- Language Focus



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

rare	نادر	calendar	تقويم	felucca	مركب شراعى / فلوكة
waterfalls	شلالات مياه	reign	عهد / فترة حكم	mountain	جبل
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	sunset	غروب الشمس	island	جزيرة

• Extra vocabulary

fantastic	رائع	brightly decorated	مزين بألوان زاهية	Nubian	نوبى
shape	شكل	trip	رحلة [قصيرة]	postcard	بطاقة بريدية
history	تاريخ	quiet = calm	هادئ	forest	غابة
particularly	خاصة	traffic	حركة مرور		

• Famous tourist places in Egypt أماكن سياحية مشهورة في مصر

Elephantine Island	جزيرة الفنتين	Temple of Philae	معبد فيلة
Aswan Botanical Garden	حديقة النباتات بأسوان	Aswan Museum	متحف أسوان
Tombs of the Nobles	مقابر النبلاء		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
travel يسافر / ينتقل	traveled	understand يفهم	understood
miss يفقد/يفتقد	missed	find يجد	found

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the oldest part of.....	الجزء الأقدم فى	by boat	بالقارب
in fact	فى الحقيقة	full of	ملىء بـ
go for long walks	يذهب للتمشية لمسافات طويلة	from the reign of	من عهد
through the desert	عبر الصحراء	See you soon!	أراك قريباً!

Did you know ?

There are rocks from the White Desert which people often call them "chicken and mushroom" rocks!
يوجد صخور من الصحراء البيضاء. غالباً ما يطلق عليها الناس "صخور الدجاج والفطر!"

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Elephantine Island	island - Aswan	Nagwa is on Elephantine Island in Aswan with her friends.
	full - history	Elephantine Island is full of history.
	rare - calendar	They found a very rare calendar.
	Nubian	They were walking in one of the Nubian villages.
	sunsets	The sunsets are fantastic from a felucca.

II Listening and Reading

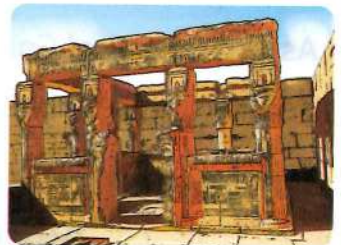
Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Hi Dalia!

How are you ? I'm missing you^[1] ! I'm on Elephantine Island^[2] and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the "Elephantine" name-we think it's the shape^[3] !



Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.

In fact^[4], all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum^[5]. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare^[6] calendar^[7] from the reign^[8] of Thutmose III.

[1] أفنتدك

[2] جزيرة إلفنتين

[3] شكل

[4] في الحقيقة

[5] متحف أسوان

[6] نادر

[7] تقويم

[8] فترة حكم / عهد

Notes for parents

مرحبًا داليا! كيف حالك؟ أنا أفنتدك! أنا في جزيرة إلفنتين وهي المكان الأكثر روعة! إنها في أسوان وهناك يوجد الكثير لترات. بالأمس، سافرت بالقارب إلى الجزيرة مع أصدقائي وكنا نحاول فهم اسم "إلفنتين" - نعتقد أنه شكل الجزيرة! جزيرة إلفنتين هي أقدم جزء في أسوان في الواقع كل الجزيرة مليئة بالتاريخ. بعد ذلك، ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان. كنا ننظر إلى كل الأشياء القديمة من الجزيرة عندما وجدنا تقويمًا نادرًا جدًا من عهد تحتمس الثالث.

But it's not only about history- it's a beautiful and **calm**^[9] place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long **walks**^[10]. There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The **sunsets**^[11] are fantastic, particularly from a **felucca**^[12]. We were walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning. They have beautiful brightly **decorated**^[13] houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the **Tombs**^[14] of the **Nobles**^[15] through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave. Can't wait to see you soon!

Nagwa

[9] هادئ

[10] جولات

[11] غروب الشمس

[12] مركب شراعى

[13] مزين

[14] مقابر

[15] نبلاء

Describe the relationship between ideas.

صف العلاقة بين الأفكار.

- Learn** 1. Why is Elephantine Island the most fantastic place in Aswan?
- Because there's lots to see there.
- Practice** 2. Why will Nagwa be sad ?

III

Language focus

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Usage : الاستخدام

- ▶ We use the past continuous for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.
- ▶ نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر لنعبر عن شيء حدث واستمر لفترة في الماضي.
- ▶ - I **was watching** TV at 6 o'clock yesterday.

Formation : التكوين

1 Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد → was
We - You - They / فاعل جمع → were

→ [inf. المصدر + ing]

- ▶ - I **was listening** to the radio.
- They **were making** a cake.

لكن الأمر لا يتعلق فقط بالتاريخ - إنه مكان جميل وهادئ. لا يوجد ازدحام مروري، لذا فهي هادئة جدًا، والهواء نظيف. يمكننا المشي لمسافات طويلة. لا توجد غابات ولكن هناك الكثير من الأشجار، لذا فهي خضراء إلى حد كبير.

غروب الشمس رائع، وخاصة من المركب الشراعى. كنا نسير في إحدى القرى النوبية هذا الصباح، لديهم منازل جميلة مزينة بألوان زاهية، تناولنا الغداء هناك ونحن ننظر إلى النيل، غدًا هو صباحنا الأخير، لذلك سنذهب إلى مقابر النبلاء عبر الصحراء. سأكون حزينة جدًا للمغادرة. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك قريبًا! نجوى

2 Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية ٢.

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد → was + not + [inf. المصدر + ing]
 We - You - They / فاعل جمع → were + not + [inf. المصدر + ing]

- ▶ - I **wasn't watching** TV at 5 o'clock yesterday.
- They **were not studying** math. They **were playing** football at 5 o'clock yesterday.

◀ لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية :

was not → wasn't

were not → weren't

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام ٣.

A. Yes / No question :

أ. السؤال بـ [هل] :

Was + subject الفاعل + [inf. المصدر + ing] ?
 Were + subject الفاعل + [inf. المصدر + ing] ?

- ▶ - Was she **making** lunch ?
 * Yes, she **was**. * No, she **wasn't**.
- Were they **swimming** in a lake ?
 * Yes, they **were**. * No, they **weren't**.

B. Wh-question :

ب. السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word + was/were + subject الفاعل + [inf. المصدر + ing] ?
 كلمة الاستفهام + was/were + subject الفاعل + [inf. المصدر + ing] ?

- ▶ - What **were** you **doing** at 5 am yesterday ?
 - I **was doing** my homework.
- ▶ - What **was** she **doing** yesterday evening ?
 - She **was sleeping**.

◀ تذكر :

- عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ [e] غير منطوق [قبلة حرف ساكن] تحذف [e] قبل إضافة [ing].

make → making take → taking

- إذا انتهى الفعل [بحرف ساكن + حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن] نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة [ing] [بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد].

swim → swimming shop → shopping



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word [s] between brackets :

1. Was [they] washing her dress yesterday ?
2. The kids were [sleep] at 6 yesterday.
3. My brother and sister [was] playing tennis at 11 am yesterday.
4. [Are] you working at 7 pm last night ?
5. Was he [did] his homework ?
6. What [is] she doing at 10 am yesterday ?
7. They were [try] to understand the "Elephantine" name.
8. What [are] your parents doing yesterday ?
9. She was [played] with her cat at 3 pm yesterday.
10. What [is] he doing at 7 pm last night ? [دقهلية - سنبلأوين ٢٠٢٤]
11. He [were] playing when his mother came. [بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤]
12. We were [have] a good time at the park. [دقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤]
13. Ahmed and Kareem [are] studying English at 10 yesterday. [بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤]
14. I [sleep] yesterday in the evening.
15. Were you [work] on your school project ?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Was studying English yesterday ?
a. you b. she c. they d. we
2. Nada was fatta for lunch at 2 pm yesterday.
a. made b. make c. making d. makes
3. They swimming in the lake yesterday.
a. were b. are c. do d. did
4. He eating an ice cream.
a. wasn't b. don't c. didn't d. weren't
5. What were they at 4 pm yesterday ?
a. does b. do c. doing d. did

تدريب تلقائي
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



• Ask your child to write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises | on Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- Elephantine Island is in [القليوبية - قها ٢٠٢٤]
a. Giza b. Aswan c. Luxor d. Cairo
- It is the part of Aswan.
a. newest b. oldest c. biggest d. playing
- The island is full of
a. restaurants b. plays c. history d. toys
- Yesterday, I went to the island by
a. car b. bus c. taxi d. boat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We had a nice trip along the Nile on a
a. bus b. felucca c. foot d. plane
- The tourists enjoy diving and watching in the Red Sea.
a. forests b. coral reefs c. sunsets d. mountains
- I my grandparents. I didn't see them for a long time.
a. protect b. miss c. save d. find
- This calendar is from the of Thutmose III.
a. home b. reign c. class d. island

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

tourists - boat - forests - oldest - sunsets

Elephantine Island is an amazing place. It's in Aswan. Tourists can travel by ^[1] to visit it. The island is the ^[2] part of Aswan. The island is a beautiful calm place. There are no ^[3] , but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The ^[4] are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. [الأقصر ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are a lot of wonderful places in Egypt. Aswan is one of these places. Aswan is a beautiful and calm place. There isn't much traffic, so it's quiet and the air is clean. There are no forests but there are lots of trees so it's quite green.

Last summer, I visited Aswan with my family. We went to Elephantine Island by boat. It's a fantastic place. Elephantine Island is full of history.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "wonderful" means " ".
a. dark b. ugly c. amazing d. bad
2. There are lots of in Aswan so it's green.
a. forests b. trees c. cars d. buses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

4. When did the writer and his family visit Aswan ?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - from - The sunset - felucca - fantastic - the.
.....

2. afternoon - they - music - Were - to - listening - yesterday ?
.....

[القاهرة - النزهة ٢٠٢٤]

6 Read and write the correct form of the word [s] between brackets.

1. He was [walk] down the road.
2. What [was] they doing at ten o'clock yesterday ?

[الجيزة - الحوامدية ٢٠٢٤]

7 Punctuate the following.

dahab is a town in Egypt
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Elephantine Island

Guiding elements :

- fantastic place
 - full of history
-
.....
.....
.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	local people	سكان محليين
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	wildlife	الحياة البرية	environment	البيئة

• Extra vocabulary

exciting	مثير / ممتع	journey	رحلة [طويلة]	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
historical	تاريخي	monuments	آثار	comfortable	مريح
carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون	pollution	تلوث	culture	ثقافة
sea animals	حيوانات بحرية	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو	oasis	واحة	project	مشروع
local	محلي	natural	طبيعي	tourism	السياحة

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
damage يدمر/يتلف	damaged	dive يغطس	dove
preserve يحافظ	preserved	pay يدفع	paid
cause يسبب	caused	give يعطي	gave

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

I see.	افهم ما تقصد.	learn about	يتعلم عن
create ... from	ينتج ... من	look after	يعتني بـ
pros and cons of ...	مميزات وعيوب ..	give jobs	توفر فرص عمل

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Eco-tourism	environment	Eco-tourism looks after the environment.
	travel - plane	Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane.
	local hotels	Eco-tourists stay in small, local hotels.
	wildlife - projects	Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife projects.

Notes for parents

Tip !

Eco : means relating to the environment.

بيئي : تعني متعلق بالبيئة.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- damages the natural environment.
a. Pollution b. Tourism c. Culture d. Sport
- We should help preserve the places like the Temple of Philae.
a. natural b. historical c. colorful d. sports
- The helps tourists to learn about Egypt's history.
a. shoemaker b. athlete c. tour guide d. weather
- The new project will jobs to many local people.
a. give b. do c. preserve d. cause

II

Listening script

What is eco-tourism ?

ما هي السياحة البيئية



A tourist is diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef.

سائح يغوص في البحر الأحمر بالقرب من الشعاب المرجانية.



Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village.

واحة سيوة للسياحة والقرية البيئية التابعة لليونسكو.



Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a **tour guide**⁽¹⁾ in Hurghada. Tell us about **eco-tourism**⁽²⁾, please. What is it ?

مرحبًا شريف. شكرًا لك على قدومك للتحدث معنا. شريف مرشد سياحي في محافظة الغردقة. أخبرنا عن السياحة البيئية من فضلك. ما هي ؟

Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the **environment**⁽³⁾ and helps local people.



أهلاً، داليا. السياحة البيئية شيقة للغاية. فهي السياحة التي تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.



How does it help the environment and people ?

كيف تساعد السياحة البيئية كلا من البيئة والسكان ؟

(1) مرشد سياحي

(2) السياحة البيئية

(3) البيئة

Eco-tourists^[4] don't like to travel by plane because of the **pollution**^[5] planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.



لا يفضل السياح البيئيون السفر بالطائرة وذلك بسبب التلوث الذي تتسبب فيه الطائرات، فهم يتنقلون اما بالقطار، أو سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.



I see. Where do they stay ?

افهم ما تقصد. اين يقيم السياح البيئيون ؟

They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or **pay**^[6] to stay in people's houses.



(4) السياح البيئيون

(5) تلوث

(6) يدفع

(7) حياة برية

(8) ثقافة

(9) حفظ

(10) يغوص

لا يحب السياح البيئيون الإقامة في الفنادق الكبيرة. يقيم تلك السياح في فنادق محلية صغيرة أو يدفعون أموال في مقابل الإقامة في منازل السكان.



What do they do when they travel ? ماذا يفعل السياح البيئيون اثناء سفرهم ؟

They like to learn about local **wildlife**^[7] projects and local **culture**^[8].



هم يستمتعون بالتعرف على المشاريع المحلية للحياة البرية والثقافة المحلية.



Can you give me an example ?

هل بإمكانك أن تعطيني مثال ؟

Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, **preserving**^[9] the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can **dive**^[10] and how they can be with the animals.



بالتأكيد، هنا في مصر، لدينا بعض من المشاريع الرائعة في البحر الأحمر التي تهدف إلى الحفاظ على الشعاب المرجانية والحيوانات البحرية، يأتي السياح إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون بالأماكن التي يستطيعون الغوص بها وكيف يمكنهم أن يكونوا مع الحيوانات.



That sounds very good ! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

يبدو هذا رائع! شكراً لك يا شريف على وقتك.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Tourism

السياحة

Good things (pros)

الأشياء الجيدة

1. Tourism gives jobs for local people.
توفر السياحة فرص عمل للسكان المحليين.
2. Tourism helps people learn about new cultures.
تساعد السياحة الناس في التعرف على ثقافات جديدة.

Bad things (cons)

الأشياء السيئة

1. Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
تنتج السياحة الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون من الرحلات الجوية.
2. Tourism damages the natural environment.
تقوم السياحة بتدمير البيئة الطبيعية.
3. Tourism damages the historical places or monuments.
تُحدث السياحة تلف بالأماكن التاريخية أو الآثار.

Eco-tourism

السياحة البيئية

Pros إيجابيات

1. It helps the environment.
تساعد البيئة.
2. It helps to protect the wildlife.
تساعد في حماية الحياة البرية.
3. It doesn't cause much pollution.
لا تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Cons سلبيات

1. It's not as comfortable as normal tourism.
ليست مريحة كالسياحة التقليدية.
2. There are limited places you can reach without taking a plane.
توجد أماكن محدودة يمكنك الوصول إليها بدون ركوب طائرة.

- Help your child read and identify the good things and bad things about tourism.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة عن السياحة.
- Help your child read and identify the pros and cons of eco-tourism.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على مميزات وعيوب السياحة البيئية.

III Pronunciation

★ How to say three consonants together

كيف نقوم بنطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معاً

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Some words are hard to say because there are three consonants together.

str

strawberry	فراولة
string	خيوط
street	شارع
strong	قوي

scr

scratch	يخدش
screw	مسمار
screen	شاشة
scream	يصرخ

thr

throne	عرش [كرسي الملك]
throat	حنجرة
three	رقم ثلاثة
throw	يلقي / يرمى
through	خلال/عبر



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Look and write the missing sounds.

1.



___ ing

2.



___ een

3.



___ one

2 Read and circle the words that start with three consonants together.

The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.

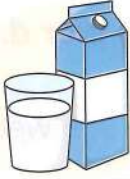
Notes for parents

• Help your child read and learn about consonants.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الحروف الساكنة.

Learn to correct spelling mistakes.

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



milk لبن



chocolate شوكولاتة



cake كعكة/ تورتة



beans فول



ice skating التزلج على الجليد



lake بحيرة



pearls لؤلؤ



belt حزام



sneakers حذاء رياضي



Pop Quiz on Spelling mistakes

1 Read and tick (✓) for the correct spelling.

1.



milk ☐
milc ☐

2.



cakke ☐
cake ☐

3.



beans ☐
beanc ☐

2 Look and correct the word.

1.



perls

2.



chokolate

3.



sneacers

• Help your child look and read the words.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ الكلمات.

1. Ask your child to read and tick (✓) for the words with the correct spelling.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمات ذات الهجاء الصحيح.

2. Ask your child to look at the pictures and correct the spelling mistakes.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويصحح الأخطاء الهجائية.

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Eco-tourism is a/an..... idea.
a. bad b. ugly c. exciting d. weak
- Sherif is a in Hurghada.
a. trader b. tour guide c. doctor d. vet
- He tells the tourists where they can
a. walk b. run c. play d. dive
- Normal tourism the natural environment.
a. looks after b. protects c. damages d. saves

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- helps people learn about new cultures.
a. Diving b. Pollution c. Tourism d. Wildlife
- We should our Egyptian monuments.
a. damage b. preserve c. create d. destroy
- The told the tourists interesting information.
a. driver b. shoemaker c. guest d. tour guide
- Eco-tourism helps to protect the
a. pollution b. wildlife c. journey d. gases

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pollution – train – pay – oasis – environment

Eco-tourism is very useful, so everyone should encourage it. Eco-tourism helps people and the^[1] Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the^[2] that planes cause. They travel by^[3], on foot, or by bike. They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or they^[4] to stay in people's houses.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- reefs – near – like to – dive – Eco-tourists – coral.

.....

- tourism – normal – as comfortable – isn't – Eco-tourism – as.

.....

- 5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tourism is very important to a lot of countries. On one hand, it gives jobs to local people. It helps tourists learn about new cultures. On the other hand, it can damage the environment. It creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places. People should try eco-tourism. It looks after wildlife, monuments and local people.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is "".
- a. Tourism b. Historical places
c. Monuments d. Pollution
2. The underlined word "damage" means
- a. save b. protect c. destroy d. create

B. Answer the following questions.

- ### 3. What can tourism damage ?

- #### 4. Why should people try eco-tourism ?

6 Punctuate the following.

how does tourism help egypt ?

• **7** Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Pros and cons of eco-tourism

Guiding elements :

- normal tourism
- local people

[illegible]

► Taba : My favorite eco-resort
► Project



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	hiking	التنزه على الأقدام
eco-lodges	نُزل بيئية (بيوت صغيرة صديقة للبيئة)	camp	معسكر
eco-holiday	عُطلة/ إجازة بيئية	eco-resort	منتجع سياحي بيئي
diving	غوص/ غطس	excellent	ممتاز
camping	تخييم [إقامة معسكر]	fascinating	رائع/ خلاب

• Extra vocabulary

flyer	نشرة إعلانية	structure	بناء / مبني	Taba	مدينة طابا
eco-destination	وجهة بيئية	opinion	رأي	ibex	وعل [ماعز جبلي/ بري]
valley	وادي	activities	أنشطة	friendly	ودود
fantastic	رائع	hut	كوخ	building	مبني
main heading	عنوان رئيسي	Sinai	محافظة سيناء	sub-heading	عنوان فرعي
round	مستدير	hike	يتنزه	advertise	يعلن

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

example of	مثال على	for a great holiday	لعطلة رائعة
good for	صالح لـ/ جيد لـ	take part in	يشارك في



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Swimming and are water sports .
a. running b. boxing c. diving d. hiking
- I like taking part in exciting like camping and hiking.
a. films b. activities c. concerts d. parties
- Hurghada is my favorite for holidays in Egypt.
a. valley b. exam c. flyer d. eco-resort

Tip !

An eco-destination is a place you are going to which is good for the environment. This is because people there look after the environment.

الوجهة البيئية هي المكان الذي ستذهب إليه وهو مفيد للبيئة وهذا لأن الناس هناك يعتنون بالبيئة.

II

Listening and Reading

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Why is Taba good for eco-tourism ?

Eco-tourism in Egypt

Taba is an **excellent**^[1] example of a part of Egypt where **eco-tourism**^[2] works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic **wildlife**^[3] in Taba, like the Nubian **ibex**^[4] and **rare**^[5] birds. This is very good for the **eco-tourists**^[6] because they can go and enjoy the environment.

The local people are very **friendly**^[7], so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are **fascinating**!

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, **hiking**^[8], and camping. They can stay in camps and **eco-lodges**^[9].

You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!



Camp in Sinai, Egypt



Nawamis Structure - Sinai, Egypt

[1] ممتاز

[2] سياحة بيئية

[3] حياة برية

[4] وعل/ماعز جبلي

[5] نادر

[6] سياح بيئيين

[7] ودود

[8] تنزه

[9] نُزل بيئية

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

Learn

1. The underlined word "**fascinating**" has the same meaning as

- a. wonderful b. ugly c. bad d. terrible

Practice

2. The underlined word "**friendly**" means

- a. angry b. busy c. kind d. strong

تعد طابا مثالاً ممتازاً لجزء من مصر حيث تعمل فيه السياحة البيئية بشكل جيد. يمكنك أن تجد هناك الوديان والجبال والصحراء والبحر. يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا مثل الوعل النوبي، والطيور النادرة. هذا جيد جداً للسياح البيئيين لأنهم يستطيعون الذهاب والاستمتاع بالبيئة. السكان المحليون ودودون للغاية، لذا يمكن للسياح البيئيين تناول وجبة معهم أو التحدث معهم عن ثقافتهم. إذا كنت تحب التاريخ، فهناك الكثير في طابا. هناك قرية النواميس، وهي عبارة عن قرية من مباني مستديرة الشكل قديمة جداً. إنها مباني رائعة! يمكن للسياح البيئيين في طابا الاستمتاع بالغوص والتنزه والتخييم. يمكنهم البقاء في المخيمات والنزل البيئية. يمكنك أن تجد كل شيء في طابا لقضاء عطلة رائعة!

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba

النشرة الإعلانية التي تعلن عن العطلة البيئية في طابا

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

السياحة البيئية المثالية في مصر

Meet the local people

Talk to them about their way of life.

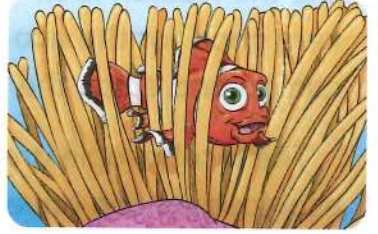
قابل السكان المحليين
تحدث إليهم عن أسلوب حياتهم.



Enjoy the wildlife

Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.

استمتع بالحياة البرية
تعال وشاهد أروع صور الحياة البرية في مصر! لدينا
أسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.



Enjoy the local culture

Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old village.

استمتع بالثقافة المحلية
قم بزيارة قرية نواميس التي يبلغ عمرها 6000 عام.



Stay in our comfortable huts

They are cool and eco-friendly.

أقم في أكواخنا المريحة
فهي رائعة وصديقة للبيئة.



Take part in exciting activities

You can hike, swim, and dive.

شارك في أنشطة ممتعة
يمكنك التنزه والسباحة والغوص.



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the flyer.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النشرة الإعلانية.

General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- You can find everything in Taba for a holiday.
a. bad b. great c. ugly d. harmful
- Nawamis is a village of round, very buildings.
a. new b. big c. old d. high
- Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, and camping.
a. sleeping b. drawing c. hiking d. reading
- They can stay in camps and
a. hotels b. eco-lodges c. apartments d. offices

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Many people like in the desert.
a. building b. camping c. diving d. sailing
- They need comfortable sneakers to enjoy
a. swimming b. painting c. hiking d. drawing
- People are very in Taba, so you can talk to them.
a. friendly b. historical c. dangerous d. scary
- There's fantastic in Taba, like Nubian ibex and rare birds.
a. sand b. rocks c. mountains d. wildlife

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

dive – eco-tourism – collect – huts – activities

Many eco-tourists like spending their eco-holiday in Egypt. Egypt is a perfect place for^[1] Eco-tourists can stay in comfortable^[2] They are cool and eco-friendly. They can take part in exciting^[3] They can hike, swim and^[4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex, and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment.

The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "fantastic" means " " .
a. bad b. wonderful c. boring d. poor
2. The eco-tourists can talk to the local people about their
a. culture b. books c. sports d. children

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

4. What kinds of animals can we find in Taba ?
.....

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. is - for - Why - Taba - good - eco-tourism ?
.....

2. in Taba - eco-friendly - The huts - cool - are - and.
.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

you can find everything in taba.
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

Guiding elements :

- local people
- eco-lodges

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Demonstrate understanding of specific details



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.



التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في فهم تفاصيل معينة في النص.



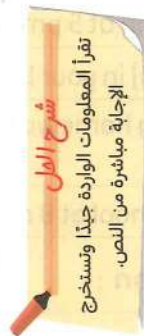
مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا حيث تكون الإجابة موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

I'm Nada. I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. We think it's the shape! Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.



- Elephantine Island is in
a. Fayoum b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Giza
- Nada was traveling to the island with her
a. family b. friends c. sisters d. mother
- Elephantine Island is the part of Aswan.
a. oldest b. longest c. fastest d. nearest

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

- You can find the Nubian in Taba.
a. ibex b. fox c. dog d. cat
- Eco-tourists can stay in and eco-lodges.
a. hotels b. tents c. camps d. boats
- Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, , and camping.
a. running b. hiking c. fishing d. flying

2

Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

◀ التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.

◀ اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Review

▶ I /He /She /It مفرد → was	ضمائر الفاعل مع [v. to be] في الماضي
▶ You /We /They /جمع → were	
▶ was / were → [inf. + ing]	في [الماضي المستمر] نستخدم [was/were] وبعدهم الفعل مضاف له ing
▶ yesterday evening / at 8 o'clock yesterday	كلمات داله على زمن الماضي المستمر تعبر عن شيء استمر لفترة زمنية في الماضي

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
① What [was] you doing at 7am yesterday ?	were	نستخدم [were] مع [you]
② They were [walk] yesterday morning.	walking	ماضي مستمر
③ [Were] she making cakes ?	Was	نستخدم [Was] مع [she]
④ We were [watch] TV at 6 pm yesterday.	watching	ماضي مستمر

Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

① [Was] they swimming ?	Were	.....
② Tarek [is] reading at 5 pm yesterday.	was	.....
③ Were you [sleep] in your bedroom ?	sleeping	.....
④ She [isn't] doing homework yesterday evening.	wasn't	.....
⑤ I was [go] to school at 8 am yesterday.	going	.....

◀ اكتب التصحيح

① I was [listen] to the radio.	.....	ماضي مستمر
② We [was] walking this morning.	.....	نستخدم [were] مع [we]
③ [Were] he making lunch ?	.....	نستخدم [Was] مع [he]
④ What were they [do] yesterday morning ?	.....	ماضي مستمر
⑤ I [weren't] playing at 7 pm yesterday .	.....	نستخدم [wasn't] مع [I]

3

Sentence Building

الجملة الخبرية ١

1	was - I - boat - by - traveling.
2	can - We - go - long - walks - for.
3	stay - They - hotels - small - in.
4	very - are - People - friendly.
5	fantastic - can - You - find - wildlife.
6	was - I - breakfast - having.
7	to - went - We - Museum - Aswan.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
I	live	in a city.
		by boat.
	can go	
	are	
		breakfast.

الجملة الأمرية ٢

1	the - people - Meet - local.
2	in - huts - Stay - comfortable.
3	part in - Take - activities - exciting.
4	damage - Don't - environment - the natural.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
Don't	damage	historical places.

الجملة الاستفهامية ٣

1	she - Did - a good - trip - have ?
2	she - is - Why - sad - feeling ?
3	you - Do - in - live - a city ?
4	do - What - think - you - tourism - of ?

1	2	3	4	5
كلمة استفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
How	are	you ?		
				sad ?

4

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٣ جملة).

1 My visit to Elephantine Island

Yesterday, I was traveling to Elephantine Island by boat with my family^[1]. We were trying to understand its name^[2]. Elephantine Island is the most fantastic place in Aswan^[3]. It is the oldest part of Aswan^[4]. You can do lots of things there^[5].

2 Taba

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well^[6]. We can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there^[7]. We can find fantastic wildlife in Taba like the Nubian ibex^[8]. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping^[9]. We can find everything in Taba for a great holiday^[10].

3 The pros and cons of tourism

Tourism is very important for Egypt^[11]. Tourism gives jobs for local people^[12]. It helps people learn about new cultures^[13]. But there are some bad things about tourism^[14]. It damages the natural environment^[15]. It damages the historical places or monuments^[16].

4 Eco-tourism

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea^[17]. It looks after the environment^[18]. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause^[19]. They travel by trains or bikes^[20]. They don't like big hotels^[21]. Eco-tourists stay in small, local hotels^[22]. They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture^[23].

Review on Unit 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

felucca	مركب شراعى
forest	غابة
calendar	تقويم
island	جزيرة
tourist	سائح
monuments	آثار
oasis	واحة
rare	نادر
mountain	جبل
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
reign	عهد / فترة حكم
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
local	محلى
culture	ثقافة
eco-tourists	سياح بيئيين

Pronunciation

- / str /
strawberry - street - string
- / scr /
screen - screw - scream
- / thr /
three - throne - throw

Language

1 Statements

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't
We - You - They / فاعل جمع → were / weren't

inf. + ing (المصدر) →

- ▶ - I **was listening** to music.
- We **weren't making** cakes.

2 Interrogative

Question word + was / were + subject الفاعل + [inf. + ing (المصدر)] ?
كلمة الاستفهام

- ▶ - What **were** you **doing** at 5 am yesterday ?
- * I **was swimming**.

Test 7 on Unit 4

• نصوص الاستماع
• في نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية
• في نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- Tourism gives for local people.
a. prizes b. jobs c. books d. money
- Tourism helps people learn about new
a. festivals b. foods c. cultures d. clothes
- Sometimes tourism damages the natural
a. environment b. monuments c. museums d. energy
- Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from journeys.
a. car b. plane c. bus d. train

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- and swimming are activities we can do in the sea.
a. Drawing b. Running c. Diving d. Reading
- She looked at the to know the day of her birthday party.
a. waterfalls b. calendar c. oasis d. reign
- The Aswan Museum and the Temple of Philae are places in Aswan.
a. social b. historical c. medical d. natural
- Plane journeys pollution.
a. preserve b. protect c. miss d. cause

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

village – excellent – hiking – history – stay

The local people in Taba are very friendly. The eco-tourists can have a meal with them and learn about their culture. If you like^[1], there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a^[2] of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating! Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, ^[3], and camping. They can^[4] in camps and eco-lodges.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sharm El-Sheikh is the best place to visit in Egypt. I was so happy when I traveled with my uncle. He is a tour guide. He told me that Sharm El-Sheikh is good for eco-tourism because there are valleys, mountains, deserts and seas, so tourists can do different activities.

Tourists can enjoy hiking, camping and diving. Tourists can find everything in Sharm El-Sheikh for a great holiday.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about ".....".

a. Tourists

b. Activities

c. Deserts

d. Sharm El-Sheikh

2. "Eco" means "relating to".

a. biology

b. school

c. museum

d. environment

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

.....

4. Why is Sharm El-Sheikh good for eco-tourism ?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. having - time - They - great - were - a.

.....

2. gives - local - Tourism - for - jobs - people.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word [s] between brackets.

1. What was she [write] yesterday evening ?

2. They [didn't] eating ice cream at 7 : 00 yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following.

what are the pros and cons of eco-tourism

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

A fantastic place in Egypt

Guiding elements :

• beautiful place

• had lunch

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 8 on Unit 4

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

[الغربية / السنة ٢٠٢٤]

- You can find fantastic in Taba.
a. camps b. wildlife c. tourists d. streets
- Eco-tourists can go and enjoy the
a. environment b. school c. structure d. holiday
- The local people are very
a. lazy b. big c. friendly d. poor
- Eco-tourists can talk to the local people about their
a. food b. clothes c. culture d. village

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- helps people learn about new cultures. [سوهاج / طهطا ٢٠٢٤]
a. Pollution b. Tourism c. Diving d. Hospital
- You can see at the bottom of the sea. [الدقهلية / طلخا ٢٠٢٤]
a. lakes b. coral reefs c. islands d. rivers
- Eco-tourists in Taba can stay in camps and
a. wildlife b. eco-lodges c. environment d. holiday [المنوفية / شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤]
- Tourists pay for rooms in [السويس / جنوب ٢٠٢٤]
a. parks b. hospitals c. offices d. hotels

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

traveled – oldest – rare – Island – lake

I went to Aswan with my family last week. We ^[1] there by train. We visited the Elephantine ^[2] We went by boat. It is the ^[3] part of Aswan. We found a very ^[4] calender.

[الأقصر ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tourism is very important to Egypt. We all should help tourists when they come to Egypt. Tourism gives jobs to local people, so they can live happily as they earn much. It helps people learn about new cultures and old ones, so tourists learn about our amazing culture. When tourists visit Egypt, they like to visit Aswan to see interesting places there, like the

Temple of Philae. They also like to go to Sharm El Sheikh to dive in the Red Sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about " " .
a. Cultures b. Tourism c. Getting jobs d. Diving in the sea
2. The Temple of Philae is in
a. the Red Sea b. Sharm El Sheikh c. Cairo d. Aswan

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do tourists like to go to Aswan ?
.....

4. What does tourism give to local people ?
.....

[الفيوم / إيشواي ٢٠٢٣]

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. local - Tourists - culture - can - about - learn. [سوهاج ٢٠٢٣]
.....

2. home - doing - she - What - was - at ? [الجيزة / الهرم ٢٠٢٣]
.....

• **6 Read and write the correct form of the word [s] between brackets.**

1. Injy [sleeping] yesterday at 6 am. [القاهرة / المعادي ٢٠٢٤]

2. What [was] they making at 5 pm yesterday ? [الفيوم / إطسا ٢٠٢٤]

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

Aswan is in the south of egypt
.....

[الإسماعيلية / فايد ٢٠٢٣]

• **8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

The importance of tourism

Guiding elements :

- local people
- new cultures

.....
.....
.....
.....

[دمياط / الزرقا ٢٠٢٣]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Elephantine Island is the part of Aswan.
[newest - oldest - tallest]
2. If you like, there is lots to see there.
[people - pictures - history]
3. You can find a very rare
[gold - calendar - fish]

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

planes - after - pollution - camps

Ola : Eco-tourism is very important, isn't it ?

Adam : Sure. It looks [1] the wildlife.

Ola : Do eco-tourists travel by [2] ?

Adam : No. Because of the [3] that planes
cause.

Ola : Where do eco-tourists stay ?

Adam : In [4] and eco-lodges.

3 Read and answer the questions.

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex, and rare birds. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

A. Answer the following questions.

1. What examples of wildlife can you find in Taba ?
2. Where can eco-tourists stay in Taba ?

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Local people are
[friendly - rich - smart]
4. Tourists can talk with local people about their
[jobs - culture - houses]
5. Eco-tourists can enjoy diving, and camping.
[sailing - running - hiking]

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. The tell the tourists where to stay.
a. teachers **b.** guides **c.** doctors **d.** farmers
2. I was my book at 10:00 last night.
a. read **b.** reads **c.** reading **d.** to read
3. We should our monuments.
a. destroy **b.** protect **c.** damage **d.** hurt
4. They walk through the of the Nobles in Aswan.
a. Houses **b.** Tombs **c.** Farms **d.** Rooms
5. The cat was that wall in the morning.
a. climbing **b.** climb **c.** climbs **d.** climbed

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. and - Island - calm - is - Elephantine - beautiful.
.....
2. was - 6 pm - at - I - sleeping.
.....
3. in - Where - dive - tourists - can - Red Sea - the ?
.....
4. local - Eco-tourism - people - helps.
.....
5. good - Taba - Why - eco-tourism - is - for ?
.....

UNIT

5

Jobs we do

الوظائف التي نقوم بها

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الخامسة : Aims of Unit Five :

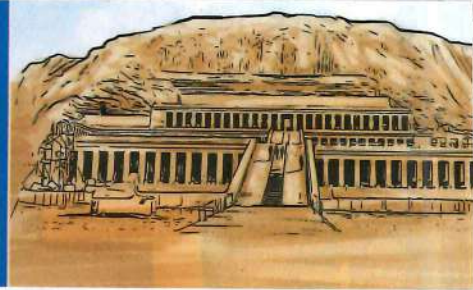
In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث، وأكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الوظائف في مصر القديمة.
- understand ecosystems.
- أفهم الأنظمة البيئية.
- practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
- أتدرب على استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين.
- practice using "must" to talk about obligation.
- أتدرب على استخدام "must" بمعنى "يجب أن" للتحدث عن الإلزام.
- understand and discuss a traditional tale.
- أفهم وأناقش قصة تقليدية.
- learn to say words with diphthongs.
- أتعلم أن أقول كلمات بها أصوات [مدغمة].
- understand pie charts.
- أفهم المخططات الدائرية.
- write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
- أكتب عن مزايا وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
- make a poster about teamwork.
- أصمم ملصق عن العمل الجماعي.



► Jobs in Ancient Egypt



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

fishermen	صيادون	hieroglyphs	الكتابة الهيروغليفية	trader	تاجر
grains	حبوب	paintings	لوحات مرسومة	craftsmen	الحرفيون
scribe	كاتب	records	سجلات	job	وظيفة
pharaoh	فرعون				

• Extra vocabulary

wheat	قمح	signs	رموز	expensive	غالي الثمن
corn	ذرة	fields	حقول	sandals	صندل [حذاء مفتوح]
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	wood	خشب	gold jewelry	مجوهرات ذهبية
flax	نبات الكتان	successful	ناجح	medical school	مدرسة الطب
columns	أعمدة	sculpture	تمثال منحوت	clay	صلصال
system	نظام	medicine	دواء	cooking pots	أواني طهي
row	صف	linen	كتان	list	قائمة
female ruler	الملكة الحاكمة	writing	الكتابة	crops	محاصيل

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
weave ينسج	weaved	keep يحفظ	kept
bake يخبز	baked	spend يقضي	spent

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

consist of	يتكون من	travel up and down the Nile	يسبح في النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا
take care of = look after	يعتني بـ	write ... down	يدون
as well	أيضًا	used to	أعتاد أن

Notes for parents

Did you know ?

More than 25 % of people in Egypt work in farming. Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt.

- أكثر من خمسة وعشرون بالمائة من السكان في مصر يعملون بالزراعة. تجلب الزراعة دخل كبير لمصر.

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Jobs in Ancient Egypt	farmers – crops	Farmers planted crops like wheat, corn and flax.
	craftsmen	The craftsmen used to weave clothes and make cooking pots.
	scribes	The scribes knew how to read and write well.
	basket – market	The women could weave baskets, make sandals and sell them at the market.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Ancient Egyptians used to write everything down.
a. English b. hieroglyphs c. math d. Arabic
- are very good at making things by their hands.
a. Players b. Farmers c. Craftsmen d. Teachers
- This gold ring is, I can't buy it.
a. good b. cheap c. expensive d. smart
- Wheat is a very useful kind of
a. fruits b. vegetables c. grains d. meat
- The carpenter needs to make chairs and beds.
a. flax b. corn c. gold d. wood

II

Listening and Reading

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

وظائف في مصر القديمة

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers.

لقد اجتهد الناس في مصر القديمة في العمل. كان لكل واحد منهم وظيفة. استطاعوا العمل كصيادين وخبازين وأطباء وتجار ولكن معظمهم عملوا كمزارعين.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع



Temple of Hatshepsut,
female ruler of Egypt,
1473-1458 BCE

• Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

لقد عمل الفلاحين في الحقول التي بالقرب من منازلهم. قاموا بزراعة المحاصيل وعادة الحبوب مثل القمح والذرة والكتان. قاموا أيضًا بزراعة الخضروات والفواكه.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

كان الحرفيون المصريون القدماء ماهرين جدًا أيضًا. فقد قاموا بصناعة لوحات ومجوهرات ذهبية وتمائيل منقوتة جميلة. كما اعتادوا على حياكة ملابس جميلة وصناعة أواني للطهي ملونة. عمل القليل من الناس في وظيفة الكتبة. كان يعرف الكتبة كيفية القراءة والكتابة جيدًا. لم تكن الكتابة المصرية سهلة التعلم. لقد قضى الكتبة العديد من السنوات في تعلم الكتابة الهيروغليفية وكان هذا التعلم باهظ الثمن.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful !

لقد عملت نساء المصريون القدماء بالمنزل واستطاعوا أيضًا العمل بالخارج. لقد قاموا بطهي الوجبات وتنظيف المنزل، واعتنوا بأطفالهن. استطاعت النساء نسج السلال، صناعة الخبز وصناعة الصنادل (الأحذية المفتوحة) واستطاعوا أيضًا بيعهم بالسوق. حتى أنهم استطاعوا أن يصبحوا فراعنة [حكام]. حتشبسوت كانت ملكة مشهورة في مصر القديمة.

عرف الجميع في مصر القديمة أن العمل مهم للحياة، لذلك كان المصريون القدماء ناجحين للغاية!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn

1. spent many years learning hieroglyphs.

a. Bakers

b. Traders

c. Scribes

d. Fishermen

Practice

2. was important for life in Ancient Egypt.

a. Games

b. Work

c. Playing

d. Swimming

3. Farmers worked in

a. fields

b. homes

c. hospitals

d. offices

★ Read, look and learn.

اقرأ، انظر وتعلم.

People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.

- كان الأشخاص الذين يعملون بتلك الوظيفة أشخاص مهمين جدًا في مصر القديمة. كانوا يدونون كل شيء. قاموا بحفظ السجلات والوثائق للأشياء الهامة.



Scribe

A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

- هي نظام كتابة يتكون من حوالي ٥٠٠ رمز مكتوب في صفوف وأعمدة. استخدمها الناس في مصر القديمة.



Hieroglyphs

People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.

- الذين قاموا بتلك الوظيفة كانوا يبحرون في النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا. كانوا يقومون ببيع وشراء أشياء مثل الذهب، الخشب، خيوط الكتان والحبوب.



Trader

If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

- إذا كنت جيد في صناعة الأشياء، ستكون هذه وظيفة جيدة بالنسبة لك. قام الأشخاص في هذه الوظيفة بصناعة أشياء من الصلصال (الفخار) والخشب والذهب.



Craftsman

Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.

- استطاع كلاً من الرجال والسيدات أداء تلك الوظيفة. كان يجب عليك الذهاب إلى مدرسة طب لتحصل على هذه الوظيفة. وكان يجب عليك أن تعنى بالمرضى وتصنع الدواء.



Doctor

General Exercises | on Lesson 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- Farmers crops like wheat, corn and flax.
a. damaged b. bought c. ate d. planted
- used to weave clothes and make cooking pots.
a. Farmers b. Traders c. Scribes d. Craftsmen
- traveled up and down the Nile buying and selling goods.
a. Women b. Vets c. Traders d. Doctors
- Women could weave baskets and make
a. sandals b. chairs c. cakes d. tables

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- Farmers could plant fruits, vegetables and
a. sandals b. grains c. trains d. baskets
- Doctors in Ancient Egypt had to go to school.
a. historical b. medical c. national d. painting
- Nada is wearing nice on her feet.
a. rows b. baskets c. sandals d. columns
- Scribes kept and lists for important things in Ancient Egypt.
a. pots b. crafts c. records d. food

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

linen - traveled - hieroglyphs - consisted - jobs

Yesterday, I was doing a school project about jobs in Ancient Egypt. Traders in Ancient Egypt [1] up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, [2] and grains. The job of scribe was very important in Ancient Egypt. Scribes spent many years learning [3] It's a system of writing which [4] of about 500 signs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good, too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "..... in Ancient Egypt".
a. Festivals b. Jobs c. Museums d. Jewelry
2. It was to learn Egyptian writing.
a. easy b. difficult c. simple d. bad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

4. Who made beautiful sculptures in Ancient Egypt ?
.....

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. job – to have – Which – like – would – you ?
.....

2. clay – from – pots – like – I – making.
.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

work was important in Ancient Egypt
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements :

- weave clothes
- traveled up and down

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

living things	كائنات حية	marine	بحري	rockpool	بركة مياه صخرية
ecosystem	نظام بيئي	non-living things	أشياء غير حية	seaweed	أعشاب بحرية

• Extra vocabulary

connection	علاقة / تواصل	connected	متصل	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
crab	سلطعون البحر [كابوريا]	natural world	عالم طبيعي	customer	زبون
alive	على قيد الحياة	manager = boss	مدير	hippo	فرس النهر
fresh water	مياه عذبة	sharp	حاد	source	مصدر
university	جامعة	rainforest	غابة مطيرة	insect	حشرة

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
survive ينجو / يتعايش	survived	forget ينسى	forgot
tidy up يرتب / ينظم	tidied up	drive يقود	drove
check يفحص	checked		
prepare يعد / يجهز	prepared		

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
non-living	something that isn't alive شيء ليس على قيد الحياة
ecosystem	- the connection between living and non-living things العلاقة بين الكائنات الحية وغير الحية - all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place كل الحيوانات والنباتات والصخور وما إلى ذلك، في مكان ما
rockpool	a small area of water that may contain rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc. مساحة صغيرة من الماء التي يمكن أن تحتوى على صخور وسلطعون البحر والأعشاب البحرية وما إلى ذلك.

living	something that is alive	شئ ما على قيد الحياة
rainforest	a forest in a tropical area that gets a lot of rain. هى غابة تقع فى منطقة استوائية ويوجد بها الكثير من الأمطار.	

II Listening and Reading

The River Nile is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river.

يعتبر نهر النيل أهم مصدر للمياه العذبة فى مصر. يعيش الكثير من النباتات والحيوانات بالقرب من النهر أو بداخله.

هل كل النظم البيئية متشابهة ؟ Are all ecosystems the same ?

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

ما هو النظام البيئى ؟ What is an ecosystem ?



a marine ecosystem



a desert ecosystem



a freshwater ecosystem



a rockpool ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is **connected**^[1]. This **connection**^[2] between **living**^[3] and **non-living things**^[4] is called an **ecosystem**^[5]. Ecosystems can be small, like a **rockpool**^[6], or they can be very big, like the **Amazon rainforest**^[7]. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

[1] متصل

[2] علاقة

[3] كائنات حية

[4] كائنات غير حية

[5] نظام بيئى

[6] بركة مياه صخرية

[7] غابات الأمازون المطيرة

كل شئ فى العالم الطبيعى متصل. تسمى هذه العلاقة بين الكائنات الحية وغير الحية بالنظام البيئى. يمكن أن تكون النظم البيئية صغيرة مثل بركة المياه الصخرية، أو يمكن أن تكون كبيرة جدًا، مثل غابات الأمازون المطيرة. الكائنات الحية فى بركة المياه الصخرية هى الأسماك وسلطعون البحر والأعشاب البحرية. الكائنات غير الحية هى الصخور والمياه والرمال وأشعة الشمس. كل هذه الأشياء تعمل معًا لإنشاء نظام بيئى. هناك الكثير من النظم البيئية المختلفة على الأرض.

III Language Focus

1 The Present Simple Tense

١. زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage : الاستخدام

We use the present simple to talk about routines and things we do every day.
◀ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين اليومي، والأشياء التي نقوم بفعلها كل يوم.

Formation : التكوين

1. Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

التصريف الأول للفعل [بدون إضافات] + اسم جمع - I - We - You - They

- ▶ - I **go** to school on foot.
- We **play** tennis after school.

He - She - It + [inf.] + **s** → معظم الأفعال يضاف لها [s]
- اسم مفرد - مصدر الفعل or
es → أما التي تنتهي بـ [o, x, ss, ch, sh] يضاف لها [es]
or
ies →

- الفعل المنتهي بـ [y] قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له [ies] مع حذف [y] :
- ▶ - He **flies** a plane.
- الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ [y] قبله حرف متحرك [a - e - i - o - u] يضاف له [s] :
- ▶ - He **plays** volleyball every Friday.

2. Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

He - She - It - اسم مفرد + doesn't } [inf.].....
I - We - You - They - اسم جمع + don't } + مصدر الفعل

- ▶ - I **don't eat** fruit.
- He **doesn't play** tennis.

◀ يمكن استخدام هذه الظروف مع المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين اليومي.

always دائماً usually عادة often غالبًا sometimes أحيانًا never أبدًا



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. He always [wash] his hands before eating.
2. I [watching] television with my parents every evening.
3. Children [goes] to schools to learn.
4. They [doesn't] walk to school, they take the bus.
5. Seif [visit] his grandparents on holidays.
6. He [catch] the bus to Giza every day. [الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤]
7. My sister [study] English every day. [الإسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٤]
8. They [has] lunch together at 4 o'clock every day.
9. Mona and Rana [doesn't] like cookies. They like cakes.
10. He doesn't [likes] to play tennis. [إسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤]
11. He [drive] to work at 10 am.
12. I [checking] the menu and make sure we have right food.
13. My boss [ask] me to prepare the vegetables every day.
14. I [cuts] the vegetables with a sharp knife.
15. At midday, the manager [open] the restaurant.
16. We [cooking] lots of delicious food for our customers every day.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

تدريب تلقائي
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



1. We at school at seven o'clock every day.
a. arrives b. arriving c. arrive d. to arrive
2. The dentists our teeth at the hospital.
a. checking b. checks c. to check d. check
3. This restaurant delicious food. I love it.
a. serves b. served c. serve d. serving
4. The pilot the planes.
a. flying b. flies c. fly d. to fly
5. Maha and Nour work in Cairo.
a. doesn't b. isn't c. don't d. aren't

2 Must / Mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

Usage : الاستخدام

- ▶ We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do.
◀ نستخدم [must] بمعنى [يجب أن] عندما نتحدث عن شيء يتعين علينا القيام به.
- ▶ We use "mustn't" when we aren't allowed to do something.
◀ نستخدم [mustn't] بمعنى [يجب ألا] عندما لا يُسمح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

Formation : التكوين

1. Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject + must + inf. [مصدر] + يجب أن

- ▶ I must do my English homework.

2. Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject + mustn't [must not] + inf. [مصدر] + يجب ألا

- ▶ We mustn't talk in the library.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

- I [must] drive too fast. It's dangerous.
- We [mustn't] look after the environment.
- You mustn't [walked] on the grass.
- We must [wore] our school uniform.
- You mustn't [staying] up too late.
- She mustn't [talks] in the library. [الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤]
- You must [are] quiet at hospital. [قنا - دشنا ٢٠٢٤]
- Students must [listens] to their teachers carefully.
- You [must] eat in the classroom. [أسبوط ٢٠٢٤]
- We must [helping] our parents at home. [القاهرة - مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٤]



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Nehal must up the kitchen.
a. tidy b. tidies c. tidied d. to tidy
- You make a lot of noise in the hospital.
a. must b. mustn't c. can d. doesn't
- She is ill. She must the doctor.
a. to see b. sees c. saw d. see
- We forget our books at school.
a. must b. doesn't c. mustn't d. aren't
- Noha help her sick brother.
a. must b. mustn't c. don't d. are

3 SB Complete the text with the correct form of the word(s) between the brackets.

Walid is a vet. He [1] [look] after hippos. He must [2] [makes] sure they are happy and healthy. He must [3] [prepares] their food. He [4] [mustn't] give them fresh water to drink. He must [5] [gives] them a bath. He [6] [mustn't] even clean their teeth !


EL-MOASSER

Interactive Homework Notebook

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- يمكنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسميع) والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

• **1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.**

1. Ali works in a
a. bank b. restaurant c. hospital d. hotel
2. He to work at 10 am.
a. walks b. runs c. drives d. swims
3. His boss asks him to prepare the
a. fruits b. drinks c. lists d. vegetables
4. He cuts the vegetables with a sharp
a. spoon b. knife c. fork d. axe

• **2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The is a small area of water that may contain rocks.
a. rainforest b. rockpool c. desert d. oasis
2. and water are non-living things.
a. Insects b. Sunlight c. Fish d. Seaweed
3. A/An means all the animals, plants and rocks in a place.
a. river b. living c. ecosystem d. source
4. Fish and are living things.
a. crabs b. rocks c. sunlight d. sand

• **3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

plants - animals - washing - source - marine

The River Nile is very important for all of us. It's the most important
[1] of fresh water in Egypt. Farmers need water from the Nile
to grow [2] People need water from the Nile for drinking and
[3] A lot of plants and [4] live near or in the river.

• **4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and **non-living things** is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ".....".
a. Living things b. Sports c. Ecosystems d. Rainforests
2. The underlined phrase "non-living things" are things that aren't
a. useful b. alive c. harmful d. good

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is an ecosystem ?

.....

4. Give two examples of living things from the text.

.....

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. living - Trees - are - things - animals - and.

.....

2. forget - mustn't - hat - Ali - his.

.....

• **6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. The chef [cooking] delicious food every day.

2. Hala must [practicing] well for the school concert.

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

ecosystem can be big or small

.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Ecosystems"

Guiding elements :

- What's an ecosystem ?
- Are all ecosystems the same ?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

- ▶ The Ant and the Grasshopper
- ▶ Pronunciation
- ▶ Math



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



bee
نحل



fence
سور



boring
شيء ممل



grasshopper
الجندب النطاط [الجرادة]

• Extra vocabulary

surprised	مندهش	fall	فصل الخريف	insects	الحشرات
however	ومع ذلك	suddenly	فجأة	sound	صوت [شيء]
strange	غريب	lazy	كسول	maybe	ربما
shine	تشرق	relaxing	مسترخي	until	حتى / لغاية
prepared	مستعد - جاهز	future	مستقبل	during	أثناء

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present	Past	Present	Past
buzz يطن - يصدر طنين	buzzed	reply يرد	replied
harvest يحصد	harvested	ignore يتجاهل	ignored

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

full of	ملء بـ	have fun	يستمتع
rest against	يستريح مستندًا على	prepare for	يجهز بـ / يستعد لـ
knock on	يطرق / يقرع على	hop away	يقفز بعيدًا
look over	ينظر أعلى	come in	يدخل
carry on	يستمر في / يواصل	on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
spend time	يقضي وقته	have a conversation	يدخل في محادثة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The Ant and the Grasshopper	grasshopper	The grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.
	need – carry on	The ant needs to carry on with her work.
	winter – food	It's winter and the grasshopper doesn't have any food.
	work hard	It's fine to have fun, but it's important to work hard.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The are buzzing all the day .
a. ants b. bees c. cats d. flowers
- The film was , so I couldn't complete it.
a. wonderful b. exciting c. boring d. interesting
- Hamed built a strong to protect the garden.
a. school b. fence c. factory d. hospital

II

Listening and Reading

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The Ant and the Grasshopper

النملة والجندب

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

The Beginning

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.



إنه فصل الربيع. تشرق الشمس وتمتلئ الحقول والحدائق بالأزهار لتأكل الحيوانات والحشرات. إنه يوم جميل. النحل يصدر طنين والفرشات تطير في ضوء الشمس. ومع ذلك يعمل النمل بجد.

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the story.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.



يقضى الجندب الكسول معظم وقته مسترخيًا. فهو لا يحب أن يعمل. اليوم، وهو يستريح متكاً على شجرة، سمع صوت غريب وأراد أن يكتشف ما هذا الصوت فنظر من فوق سور الحديقة.

The Middle

"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper. "Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.



سال الجندب : "ماذا تفعلين أيتها النملة؟" فأجابت النملة : "أنا أعمل." ثم رد الجندب قائلاً : "لكنه يوم جميل. لما لا تتوقفين عن العمل ونستمتع؟" قالت النملة : "شكراً لكنى أحتاج أن أواصل عملي."

"But working is so boring", replies the grasshopper. "Maybe," says the ant, "but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away.



قال الجندب : "لكن العمل ممل جداً". قالت النملة : "ربما ولكنه شئ علينا جميعاً القيام به. يجب أن نفكر في المستقبل وليس اليوم فحسب." لم يفهم الجندب ولذلك قفز بعيداً.

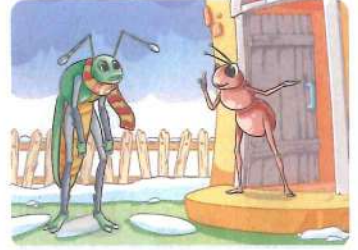
Soon, it is fall. The ant has worked hard and all her crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until she has harvested all the food and taken it inside for the winter.



وسرعان ما جاء فصل الخريف. لقد عملت النملة بجد ونمت كل المحاصيل التي زرعها بشكل جيد. لم تتوقف عن العمل حتى حصدت كل الطعام وخزنه بالداخل من أجل فصل الشتاء.

The End

Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too".



وسرعان ما جاء فصل الشتاء و الجو باردًا جدًّا. والجندب جائع. فلم يكن لديه أى طعام ولم يستطع أن يجد أى طعام. فجأة تذكر الحديث بينه وبين النملة. فذهب وطرق باب النملة وقال : "لقد فهمتُك الآن ايتها النملة. لقد عملتُ والآن لديك طعام وأنا لم أعمل وأنا جائع الآن". ردت النملة قائلة : "تفضل بالدخول. نعم إنه من الجيد أن نستمتع بوقتنا ولكن من المهم جدًّا أن نعمل أيضًا بجد".

* The moral of the story.

It's important to work to prepare for the future.

من المهم أن تعمل لتستعد للمستقبل.

Make logical inferences.

قم بعمل استنتاجات منطقية.

Learn

1. Was the grasshopper prepared for the winter ?

- No, he wasn't.

Practice

2. What do you think the grasshopper will do next spring ?

III

Pronunciation

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

A Diphthongs [صوتين متحركين يكونان صوت واحد]

/aʊ/

down	إلى أسفل/أدنى
mouse	فأر
town	مدينة
brown	لون بني
loud	صاحب

/aɪ/

Why	لماذا
try	يحاول
light	فاتح - ضوء
buy	يشترى
eye	عين

/ɔɪ/

boy	ولد
noise	ضوضاء
enjoy	يستمتع
point	يشير
toy	لعبة أطفال

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help your child identify diphthongs.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الـ "diphthongs".

B The suffix [-ist]

اللاحقة [-ist]



dentist
طبيب أسنان



biologist
عالم أحياء



journalist
صحفي



pianist
عازف بيانو



scientist
عالم



receptionist
موظف استقبال

- The suffix [-ist] means someone who does something.

اللاحقة [-ist] تعني الشخص الذي يفعل شيئًا ما.

- We often use it in words for jobs.

غالبًا ما نستخدمها في الكلمات الخاصة بالوظائف.



He's a biologist. إنه عالم أحياء.



She's a receptionist. إنها موظفة استقبال.



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Read and circle the different sound.

1. down – light – mouse

2. point – toy – town

3. loud – noise – brown

4. enjoy – loud – boy

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She is interested in reading different newspapers and she wants to be a [journal].

2. He has a toothache. He wants to see a [dent].

3. His father is a [science]. He did research about animals and plants.

Notes for parents

• Help your child know when we use the suffix (-ist).

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف متى نستخدم اللاحقة (-ist).

What is a pie chart ?

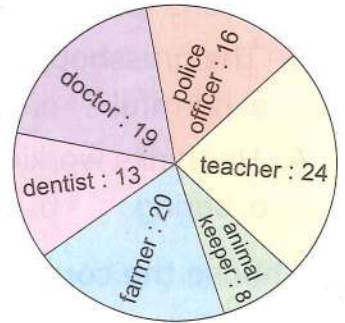
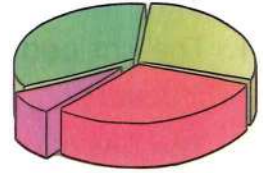
★ A pie chart is a way of showing information.

الرسم البياني الدائري هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.

ex. - What is the most popular job ?

What job do you want to do ?

police officer	16
teacher	24
farmer	20
animal keeper	8
dentist	13
doctor	19



Pop Quiz on Math

► Match the tables to the pie charts.

1. Do you want to work indoors or outdoors ?

indoors	7
outdoors	3

2. Do you want to wear a uniform at work ?

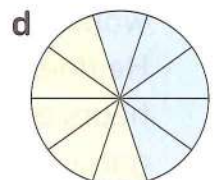
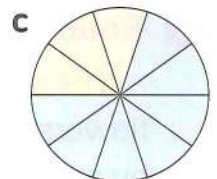
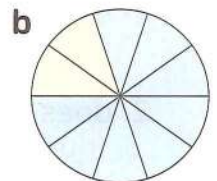
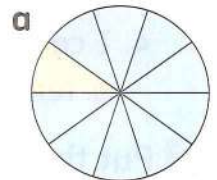
yes	2
no	8

3. Do you want to work with animals ?

yes	1
no	9

4. Do you want to work in an office ?

yes	5
no	5



General Exercises

on Lesson 3

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The ant and the grasshopper live together in the
a. desert b. forest c. garden d. lake
2. The ant always
a. runs fast b. works hard c. hops away d. jumps high
3. The grasshopper is
a. harmful b. successful c. excited d. lazy
4. He thinks working is
a. boring b. exciting c. amazing d. worrying

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Toka on the door before she entered.
a. knocked b. understood c. came d. had
2. The farmers the crops to sell them at the market.
a. described b. harvested c. left d. hid
3. The is an insect that can hop. [القاهرة - الوابلي ٢٠٢٤]
a. ant b. snake c. bee d. grasshopper
4. I can't climb the garden because it is high.
a. fence b. stairs c. table d. chair

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. flowers - full - The - gardens - are - of.
.....

2. does - What - the grasshopper - do - to - want ?
.....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

It's spring. The sun is shining. The fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence and finds an ant working. He asks the ant to play together, but the ant can't play with him because she has to work hard.



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

operation	عملية جراحية	teammate	زميل في فريق العمل	teamwork	عمل جماعي
vet	طبيب بيطري	computer programmer	مبرمج حاسوب	experiment	تجربة [معملية]
keen	متحمس [شديد الاهتمام]	concert	حفلة موسيقية	injured	مجروح - مصاب

• Extra vocabulary

young	صغير السن [شاب]	report	تقرير	office job	وظيفة مكتبية
distance	مسافة	computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر	team	فريق

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past		Present		Past	
mind	يُمانع/يهتم	minded		dislike	يكره	disliked	
scare	يخيف	scared		agree	يتفق	agreed	

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| • get sick | يمرض/يصاب بمرض | • work out the best solutions | يصل إلى أفضل الحلول |
| • I don't mind ! | أنا لا أمانع ! | • the aim of | الهدف من |
| • get out of bed | ينهض من الفراش | • the worst part of | الجزء الأسوأ في |
| • make friends | يكوّن صداقات | • keen on | متحمساً لـ |
| • check on | يفحص | • solving problems | حل المشكلات |

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Rana and Sherif's jobs	animals	Rana works with animals.
	operation	If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very clean.
	keen on	Sherif isn't keen on being outside.
	solutions - team	Sherif works out the best solutions with his team.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My pet is sick. It needs a/an
a. apple b. operation c. game d. chair
2. A helps sick animals get better.
a. farmer b. vet c. teacher d. driver
3. The dogs me so I don't like playing with them.
a. feed b. love c. scare d. leave

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or **injured**^[1], I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people **bring**^[2] their animals to me. If an animal needs an **operation**^[3], the room has to be very, very clean.

On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to **check on**^[4] the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind! What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not **keen on**^[5] being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.



Rana is a vet.

- [1] مصاب / مجروح
- [2] يجلب / يحضر
- [3] عملية جراحية
- [4] يفحص
- [5] متحمس لـ



Sherif is a computer programmer.

Describe the relationship between ideas.

صف العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. What is the worst part of Rana's job?

– It's when an animal gets sick in the night and she has to get out of bed.

Practice

2. Why didn't Sherif want to work with animals?

• Help your child to look at the pictures, listen and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

اسمى رنا. أنا أعمل مع الحيوانات وأحب عملي. عندما تكون الحيوانات مريضة أو مصابة، فانا أساعدها كي تتحسن. في بعض الأيام أعمل في الداخل ويحضر الناس حيواناتهم إلي. إذا احتاج حيوان إلى عملية جراحية، فيجب أن تكون الغرفة شديدة النظافة. في أيام أخرى، أذهب إلى منازل الناس أو مزارعهم لفحص الحيوانات. فمن الممكن أن تكون بعض الأماكن متسخة جدًا، لكنني لا أمانع! ما هو الجزء الأسوأ في الوظيفة؟ عندما يمرض حيوان ما أثناء الليل وأضطر إلى النهوض من السرير!

مرحبًا أنا شريف. عندما كنت صغيرًا، علمت أنني لا أريد العمل مع الحيوانات. إنهم يخيفوني! لست متحمسًا أن أكون بالخارج. لذلك أردت الحصول على وظيفة مكتبية. عندما كنت صغيرًا، أحببت لعب ألعاب الحاسوب. أنا أيضًا أستمتع جدًا بحل المشاكل. لذا، في عملي، أنا أقوم بكلاهما! أنا أيضًا أستمتع بالعمل مع أشخاص آخرين. هناك 16 فرد في فريقى. لا نتفق دائمًا، لكننا نتوصل إلى أفضل الحلول.

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

- When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. عندما تفكر في وظيفة ما، من المهم أن تفكر في ما يعجبك وما لا يعجبك.



- It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. من المهم أيضًا التفكير فيما تجيده وما لا تجيده.



III Writing skill

How to write about your future job

كيفية الكتابة عن وظيفتك المستقبلية

My future job وظيفتي المستقبلية

When I'm older, I want to be a because I think this is a good job for me because I like I'm good at and I enjoy I don't want to be a because I'm not good at Also, I don't really enjoy

عندما أكبر، أريد أن أكون لأنني أنا أعتقد أن هذه وظيفة جيدة بالنسبة لي لأنني أحب أنا جيد في وأستمتع بـ أنا لا أريد أن أكون لأنني لست جيدًا في وأنا أيضًا لا أستمتع حقًا بـ



Pop Quiz on Writing skill

- Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

Your future job

• working in team

• enjoy

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

• Help your child to learn how to write about his/her future job.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب عن وظيفته في المستقبل.

Teamwork ^[1]

- 1** I work in a **team** ^[2] in science when we're doing an **experiment** ^[3].

أعمل في فريق في مادة العلوم عندما نجرى تجربة معملية.



- 2** I work in a team when I'm playing football.

أعمل في فريق عندما ألعب كرة القدم.



- 3** I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.

أعمل في فريق عندما أساعد والدتي في المطبخ في المنزل.



- 4** I work in a team for the school **concert** ^[4].

أعمل في فريق من أجل الحفل الموسيقي المدرسي.



When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the **aim** ^[5] of a football team is to win. You work with your **teammates** ^[6] to do this. You can't **win** ^[7] a football match by yourself!

عندما تعمل في فريق، فأنت تعمل مع أشخاص آخرين للقيام بشيء ما معًا. على سبيل المثال، هدف فريق كرة القدم هو الفوز. أنت تعمل مع زملائك في الفريق للقيام بذلك. لا يمكنك الفوز بمباراة كرة قدم بمفردك!

(1) العمل الجماعي

(2) فريق

(3) تجربة معملية

(4) حفلة موسيقية

(5) هدف

(6) زملائك

(7) يفوز

General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Reem works with
a. teammates b. computers c. laptops d. animals
- Reem loves her
a. pet b. job c. school d. teachers
- If animals are , Reem helps to make them better.
a. sick b. good c. happy d. hungry
- If an animal needs a/an , the room has to be very clean.
a. toy b. operation c. scarf d. cage

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The can create new electronic games.
a. scribe b. computer programmer
c. journalist d. pianist
- Ali and his teammates work out the best for the problems.
a. operations b. habitats c. solutions d. chemicals
- He can't walk on his leg. [القاهرة - مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٤]
a. lazy b. strong c. injured d. boring
- A helps sick animals to get better.
a. farmer b. vet c. programmer d. scribe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

concert - experiment - teammates - aim - win

People can do many important things by working in a team. When you work in a team, you work with your [1] to do something. The pianist works in a team for a successful [2] The football player works in a team to [3] the match. At school, I work in a team in science when we're doing an [4] [سوهاج - أخميم ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ahmed. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about "Ahmed's".
a. family b. job c. food d. sport
2. The underlined phrase "work out" means "".
a. agree b. get up c. find out d. damage

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why didn't Ahmed want to work with animals ?

.....

4. Does Ahmed like teamwork ?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. people - with - enjoy - I - working - other.

.....

2. do - How - you - out - work - a solution ?

[الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٣]

.....

6 Punctuate the following.

i'm playing football in a team

.....

7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your future job

Guiding elements :

- What job would you like to do when you are older ?
- What are you good at ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٣]

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas or pieces of information



تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.



التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في وصف علاقة بين شخصين، حدثين، فكرتين أو معلومتين.

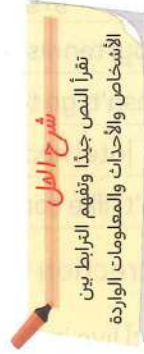


مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا أكثر من مرة للتمكن من فهم الترابط الموجود بين الأفكار والمعلومات الواردة في النص.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers planted a lot of crops. Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. They kept records and lists for important things. Craftsmen were good at making things.



1. Why were scribes important in Ancient Egypt ?
- Because they kept records and lists for important things.
2. Where did farmers work ?
- They worked in fields near their homes.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days, I work inside and people bring their animals to me. On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind!

1. How does Rana help sick animals ?
.....
2. Why does Rana go to people's houses or farms ?
.....

2

Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

▶ He /She /It /مفرد → inf. + s/es ▶ النفي → doesn't + inf.	المضارع البسيط مع هذه الضمائر يضاف للفعل s أو es وينفى بـ doesn't ويحذف s أو es
▶ I /We /You /They /جمع → inf. ▶ النفي → don't + inf.	المضارع البسيط مع هذه الضمائر يكون الفعل بدون اضافات وينفى بـ don't
▶ must /mustn't + [inf. مصدر الفعل]	يستخدم [مصدر الفعل] بعد [must /mustn't]

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
① Mrs Soha [work] in a school.	works	يضاف للفعل s مع الفاعل المفرد
② He doesn't [forgets] his books.	forget	الفعل بعد doesn't بدون اضافات
③ I [doesn't] wake up early every day.	don't	نستخدم [don't] مع [I]
④ We must [respecting] our teachers.	respect	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد must

Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 You must [doing] your homework.	do	.....
2 Tarek [play] tennis on the weekend.	plays	.....
3 They [doesn't] go to school on Fridays.	don't	.....
4 You must [ate] healthy food.	eat	.....
5 Lara [don't] like computer games.	doesn't	.....

◀ اكتب التصحيح

1	She [don't] live in Cairo.	.....	نستخدم [doesn't] مع she
2	We mustn't [talks] in the library.	.....	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد mustn't
3	I [drove] to work every day.	.....	مضارع بسيط [تصريف أول للفعل]
4	My cat [drink] milk.	.....	يضاف للفعل s مع المفرد
5	We [doesn't] have meat for dinner.	.....	نستخدم [don't] مع [We]

3

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

1 الجملـة الخبرية

1	could - They - fishermen - as - work.
2	made - They - paintings - beautiful.
3	worked - Women - home - at.
4	be - can - Ecosystems - small.
5	after - looks - He - hippos.
6	sun - The - shining - is.
7	can - We - some - have - fun.
8	full - are - Gardens - of - flowers.
9	work - I - animals - with.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
They	worked	very hard.
	could work	
	can be	
		some fun.
	are	

2 الجملـة الاستفهامية

1	ecosystem - What - an - is ?
2	would - job - Which - like - you - to have ?
3	all - Are - ecosystems - the same ?
4	you - What - are- doing ?
5	did - What - the ant - do ?
6	want - you - Do - to work - indoors ?
7	don't - Why - stop - you - working ?
8	couldn't - work - Why - many people - as scribes ?
9	want - you - Do - with - animals - to work ?

1	2	3	4	5
كلمة استفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
What	do	we	need	to survive?
	would			to have ?
			want	
	don't			
			work	

4

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢١] جملة).

1 Craftsmen

My father is a craftsman^[1]. I want to be a craftsman^[2]. I like making beautiful pots from clay^[3]. I'm good at making things^[4]. I think it is a good job for me^[5].

2 Ecosystems

Everything in the natural world is connected^[6]. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool^[7]. They also can be big, like Amazon rainforest^[8]. Living and non-living things work together to make an ecosystem^[9]. There are lots of different ecosystems^[10].

3 Women in Ancient Egypt

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home^[11]. They could work outside, too^[12]. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children^[13]. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market^[14]. They could become Pharaohs, like Hatshepsut^[15]. She was a famous queen in Ancient Egypt^[16].

4 Teamwork

Teamwork is very important^[17]. We work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment^[18]. I work in a team when I'm playing football^[19]. You can't win a football match by yourself^[20]! You work with your teammates to do this^[21].

Review on Unit 5

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الخامسة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

trader	تاجر
scribe	كاتب
dentist	طبيب أسنان
records	سجلات
receptionist	موظف استقبال
ecosystem	نظام بيئي
grasshopper	جندب
operation	عملية جراحية
scientist	عالم
journalist	صحفى
teamwork	العمل الجماعى
ruler	حاكم
grains	حبوب
hieroglyphs	الكتابة الهيروغليفية
fishermen	صيادون

Pronunciation

• /aʊ/

mouse - brown - loud - town

• /aɪ/

eye - light - buy - try

• /ɔɪ/

boy - toy - point - enjoy

Language

1 The Present Simple Tense

He / She / It + [inf.] + ^ses
Subj. فاعل + doesn't + [inf.]

► She **cuts** the vegetables with a knife.

► He **doesn't** watch the TV.

I / We / You / They + inf.

► I **drive** to work at 10 am every day.

Subj. فاعل + don't + inf.

► They **don't** play football.

2 must / mustn't

◀ تستخدم [mustn't / must] بمعنى [يجب ان / لا يجب ان] للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام.

Subject + must / mustn't + inf.

► - I **must do** my homework.

- We **mustn't talk** in the library.

Test 9 on Unit 5

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• نصوص الاستماع
• فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Sara wants to be a
a. scientist b. dentist c. vet d. journalist
- Rana doesn't like
a. games b. animals c. jobs d. teamwork
- Rana wants to be a
a. computer programmer b. scribe
c. trader d. doctor
- Rana enjoys problems.
a. reading b. solving c. writing d. making

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Doctors in Ancient Egypt made
a. records b. medicine c. paintings d. sandals
- I don't want to work with animals. They me.
a. help b. support c. scare d. entertain
- The are sea animals.
a. grasshoppers b. crabs
c. butterflies d. bees
- I work with my to solve any problems.
a. insects b. teammates c. pets d. elves

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

rockpool - living things - ecosystem - rocks - small

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a [1], or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The [2] in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are [3], water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an [4], There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and **took care of** their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become

pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut. Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful !

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined phrase "took care of" means to " " .
 a. looked after b. got ready c. ran away d. sat down
2. The text is about " " .
 a. Men in Ancient Egypt b. Craftsmen
 c. Scribes d. Women in Ancient Egypt

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What could women make and sell at the market ?

4. Who was Hatshepsut ?

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. important – is – Work – life – for – very.

2. resting – tree – against – is – He – the.

• **6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. You must [brushing] your teeth every day.

2. Hala [tidy up] the kitchen every morning.

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

she wants to be a craftsperson

• **8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Traders in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements :

- travel up and down
- sell / buy goods

Test 10 on Unit 5

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. In Ancient Egypt, people had different [الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤]
a. jobs b. homes c. families d. cars
2. grew crops like wheat, corn, and flax.
a. Fishermen b. Farmers c. Scribes d. Bakers
3. Scribes learned to read and write
a. songs b. plays c. hieroglyphs d. statues
4. Learning hieroglyphs was and took many years .
a. fun b. cheap c. useless d. expensive

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Something that is not alive is [الدقهلية / ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤]
a. lazy b. living c. non-living d. active
2. A in Ancient Egypt bought and sold things like gold.
a. scribe b. trader c. vet d. fisherman
[الجيزة / أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤]
3. Ancient Egyptian made great sculptures. [سوهاج / جهينة ٢٠٢٤]
a. fishermen b. scribes c. traders d. craftsmen
4. Youssef plays the piano. He is a [بنى سويف / ببا ٢٠٢٤]
a. journalist b. biologist c. scientist d. pianist

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

rivers - records - hieroglyphs - Scribes - papyrus

There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. [1] wrote everything down. There were scribes' schools where they could learn to read and write well. They used a system of pictures called [2] which consisted of about 500 signs written in rows. They wrote on pyramids, tombs, statues and [3] They wanted to make sure they had [4] for everything.

[الشرقية / بلبيس ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Fady, I work with animals and I love my job. If an animal is sick or **injured**, I help to make it better. Some days, I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation the room has to be very, very clean. On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "Fady's".
a. job b. animals c. farms d. houses
2. The underlined word "injured" means "".
a. strong b. well c. dirty d. hurt

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why does Fady go to people's houses or farms ?

.....

4. What's Fady's job ?

.....

[البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٤]

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. by myself - can't - I - match - a football - win.

[الفيوم / طامية ٢٠٢٣]

.....

2. in - connected - Everything - ecosystem - is.

[القاهرة / الزيتون ٢٠٢٣]

.....

• **6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. We must [helping] our parents.

[الدقهلية / السنبلوين ٢٠٢٤]

2. She always [drink] water.

[الجيزة / الهرم ٢٠٢٤]

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

teamwork is very important

.....

[الإسكندرية / المنتزه ٢٠٢٣]

• **8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

The job of a vet

Guiding elements :

- animals
- operation

.....

.....

.....

.....

[البحيرة / دمنهور ٢٠٢٣]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- People in Ancient Egypt very hard.
[worked - jumped - slept]
- In Ancient Egypt, traveled up and down the Nile.
[scribes - traders - pharaohs]
- Traders bought and sold
[grains - books - computers]

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

pharaohs - sell - weave - project

A : What are you doing ?

B : I'm doing a school [1] about women in Ancient Egypt.

A : What could women do in Ancient Egypt ?

B : They could [2] baskets and bake bread.

A : Could they [3] them at the market ?

B : Yes, they could even become [4]

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. They could be fishermen, bakers, or doctors. But most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields near their homes. They grew crops like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were good. They made beautiful paintings, beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside.

A. Answer the following questions.

- Where did farmers work in Ancient Egypt ?
.....
- What could craftsmen make from gold ?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer.

- Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a [house - job - field]
- Most of Ancient Egyptians worked as [teachers - vets - farmers]
- Farmers grew crops like [rice - corn - apples]

4 Choose the correct answer.

- They forget their books at school.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. are
- We mustn't in the library.
a. eating b. eat c. eats d. ate
- A makes pots from clay.
a. pharaoh b. trader c. craftsman d. vet
- Everything is in an ecosystem.
a. alive b. connected c. living d. harmful
- Scribes kept and lists for many things in Ancient Egypt.
a. pots b. crafts c. records d. paintings

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- worked - very - Egyptians - hard - Ancient.
.....
- working - in - team - He - a - likes.
.....
- job - like - What - you - to have - would ?
.....
- ecosystem - What - marine - the - is ?
.....
- must - medicine - You - take - the.
.....

UNIT

6

What's the weather like ?

ما هي حالة الطقس ؟

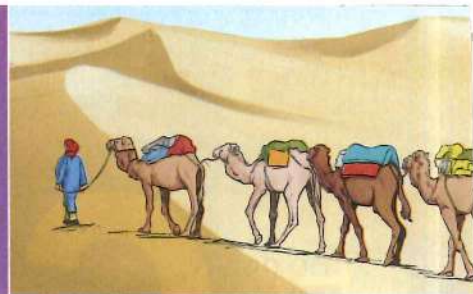
Aims of Unit Six : الأهداف العامة للوحدة السادسة :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about the weather.
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الطقس.
- read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.
- أقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.
- use adverbs of frequency with the present simple.
- أستخدم ظروف التكرار في زمن المضارع البسيط.
- understand a dialog about water pollution.
- أفهم محادثة عن تلوث المياه.
- learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.
- أتعلم كيفية التمييز بين أصوات /p/ و /b/ والحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.
- write an account of extreme weather.
- أكتب تقرير عن الطقس القاسي.
- research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.
- أبحث وأصنع منشور حول ما يجب القيام به في الطقس القاسي.





I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



cloudy ملبد بالغيوم



windy عاصف



snow جليد



rainbow قوس قزح



rainy ممطر



storm عاصفة



sunny مشمس



ice تلج

• Extra vocabulary

weather	طقس	news	أخبار	wind	رياح
summer	فصل الصيف	dry	جاف	rain	مطر
degree	درجة حرارة مئوية	temperature	درجة حرارة	cloud	سحابة
normal	عادي/طبيعي	finally	في النهاية	climate	مناخ
variety	تنوع	although	على الرغم من ذلك	warm	دافئ

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

rain تمطر

believe يعتقد - يصدق

Past

rained

believed

Irregular

Present

mean يقصد

bring يجلب

Past

meant

brought

Notes for parents

Did you know ?

The hottest day ever in Egypt was 51.1°C, in Aswan.

كان اليوم الأكثر حرارة على الإطلاق في مصر يبلغ 51.1 درجة مئوية في أسوان.

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• variety of	تنوع في	• in the day	في فترة النهار
• go down	تنخفض / تنزل	• at night	في الليل
• a lot more	أكثر بكثير	• by the sea	بجوار البحر
• per year	في السنة / سنويًا	• around 12 °C	حوالي ١٢ درجة مئوية
• keep cool	يحافظ على برودته	• eight times	ثمانية أضعاف
• stay at	يبقى / يمكث في	• That's why	لذلك

II Listening and Speaking

A weatherwoman and presenter are talking about the weather in Egypt.



Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the **news**^[1] of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.



Rainy in Cairo ? **How often**^[2] does it rain in Cairo ? It's always sunny there!



- [1] اخبار
- [2] كم عدد المرات
- [3] ماذا عن
- [4] يصدق
- [5] عادي / طبيعي

I know, but today it's rainy.

What about^[3] Sharm El-Sheikh ?



It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.

I don't **believe**^[4] it! What about Alexandria ?



It's going to be windy. That's **normal**^[5] – it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.

Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor ?



Oh, this is very important : Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

III Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Which city is very green ? أي مدينة خضراء جدًا ؟

The weather in Egypt

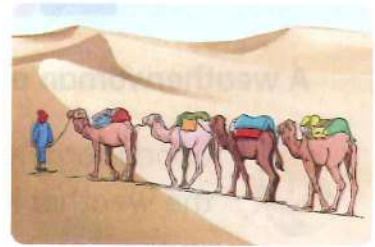
We have a nice variety of **weather**^[1] in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the **temperature**^[2] sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places!

Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 °C.

The desert has a very special **climate**^[3], with very hot days and very cold nights. The temperature can go to 0 °C. This **means**^[4] that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo - there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It **brings**^[5] the water from the south.

By the sea, it **rains**^[6] a lot more - Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!



[1] طقس

[2] درجة الحرارة

[3] المناخ

[4] يعنى

[5] يجلب

[6] تمطر

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn

1. The Nile brings the water from the

- a. north b. east c. south d. west

Practice

2. People who live in the desert try to keep at night.

- a. warm b. cool c. sad d. fat

Did you know ?

°C is short for "degrees Celsius".

°C هي اختصار لـ "درجة مئوية"

الطقس في مصر: لدينا تنوع لطيف في الطقس في مصر، على الرغم من أنها عادة ما تكون شديدة الجفاف. لدينا صيف حار جدًا ودرجة الحرارة تصل في بعض الأحيان إلى 50 درجة في بعض الأماكن! الشتاء لدينا أكثر برودة، ويمكن أن تنخفض درجات الحرارة إلى حوالي 12 درجة. تتمتع الصحراء بمناخ خاص جدًا، حيث يكون النهار شديد الحرارة والليل شديد البرودة. يمكن أن تصل فيه درجة الحرارة إلى صفر. وهذا يعني أن من يعيش في الصحراء يحاول أن يتقاضي الحرارة في النهار ويحتفظ بالدفء ليلاً.

في كثير من الأحيان لا تمطر في القاهرة - هناك حوالي 25 مم فقط من الأمطار كل عام. إنها قليلة جدًا مقارنة بمدينة لندن: تمتلك لندن حوالي 600 ملم في السنة. يمكنك الآن معرفة سبب أهمية نهر النيل للجميع في مصر. إنه يجلب الماء من الجنوب. بالقرب من البحر، تمطر أكثر من ذلك بكثير - مدينة الإسكندرية لديها حوالي ثمانية أضعاف الأمطار عن التي في القاهرة. هذا هو السبب في أنها خضراء للغاية!

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The weather in the of Egypt is very special.
a. countryside b. desert c. town d. lake
- The desert in Egypt has very days and very cold nights.
a. rainy b. cloudy c. hot d. windy
- People in the desert try to keep in the day.
a. cold b. cool c. clean d. warm
- They try to keep warm at
a. morning b. afternoon c. day d. night

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- In summer, it's in Egypt.
a. rainy b. sunny c. windy d. cold
- The goes down to 12° in winters.
a. storm b. news c. rainbow d. temperature
- It's , so the streets are wet.
a. cool b. warm c. rainy d. sunny
- The looks amazing in the sky. It's colorful.
a. rainbow b. snow c. ice d. cloud

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

storms – sunny – Cairo – green – rain

Noha's favorite season is summer. She likes^[1] weather. Noha doesn't like clouds,^[2] and rain. Noha lives in^[3] It doesn't often rain there. There's only about 25 mm of^[4] every year.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. important – Nile – the – Why – is ?
.....

2. a very – has – The desert – climate – special.
.....

5 Punctuate the following

which city is very green in Egypt
.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



tidal wave موجة مد وجزر



tornado إعصار



heat wave موجة حارة



sandstorm عاصفة رملية



flood فيضان

strong winds / storm
رياح قوية / عاصفة

• Extra vocabulary

store	متجر	reply	رد	voice	صوت إنسان
cry	صرخة	nearby	مجاور / قريب	quiet voice	صوت هادئ
son	ابن	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	floor	أرضية
worried	قلق	lady	سيدة	shade	ظل
seasons	فصول السنة	lemonade	عصير ليمون	shady	مظلل
watermelon	بطيخ				

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| • cool us down | تقلل درجة حرارتنا | • come back | يعود |
| • on the shady side | على الجانب المظلل | • come running | يأتي مسرعًا |
| • past all our friends' houses | مررنا بكل منازل أصدقائنا | • get onto a chair | يضع ... على كرسي |
| • At first | في البداية | • a bit open | مفتوح قليلًا |
| • in her 70s | في السبعين من عمرها | • lying on the floor | مستلقى على الأرض |
| • run outside | يجري خارجًا | • fall down | يسقط |

°C = degrees celcius
درجة مئوية

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

My heat wave story

قصتي في الموجة الحارة

The Beginning

The very hot summer became a heat wave.

A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees celcius, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.

أصبح الصيف شديد الحرارة موجة حارة. وتحدث الموجة الحارة عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بشكل كبير فوق ٤٠ درجة مئوية، ولا يستطيع أحد فعل أي شيء. لقد مكثنا في الظل وحاولنا شرب الكثير من الماء.



Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

طلبت مني أمي ومن صديقتي لمياء الذهاب إلى المتجر [السوق] لشراء البطيخ والعنب والليمون لنصنع عصير الليمون لخفض درجة حرارتنا. فذهبنا إلى السوق وعدنا من الجانب المظلل من الشارع ومررنا بكل منازل أصدقائنا.

The middle

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open, so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!' We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said.

وفجأة، أثناء مرورنا بمنزل السيدة سهير، سمعنا صوت صرخة. السيدة سهير هي سيدة لطيفة في السبعين من عمرها وتعيش مع ابنها ولكن ابنها يذهب إلى العمل أثناء النهار. شعرت أنا وصديقتي لمياء بالقلق وكان باب منزل السيدة سهير مفتوح قليلاً لذلك طرقتنا باب المنزل ونادينا "السيدة سهير!" في البداية لم يكن هناك رد، ولكن بعد ذلك سمعنا صوت هادئاً قائلاً: "أنا هنا!" دخلنا إلى المطبخ وكانت السيدة سهير ملقاة على الأرض وكانت تقول: "ساعدوني!"

The End

At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit.

في البداية لم تكن نعرف ماذا يجب أن نفعل ولكن بعد ذلك أسرعنا إلى الخارج ورأيت السيد منيب، الذي يعمل بالقرب منها، فناديت عليه قائلة "سيد منيب ساعد السيدة سهير من فضلك!" فأتى السيد منيب مسرعًا. وساعد الجميع في وضع السيدة سهير على الكرسي ثم أعطيناها الكثير من الماء وبعض من الفاكهة التي كانت لدينا.

She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot.

قالت السيدة سهير أنها كانت ذاهبة لتحضر بعض المياه من المطبخ ولكنها شعرت بالتعب وسقطت أرضًا لأن الجو كان شديد الحرارة.

She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her !

ولم تستطع النهوض. كانت السيدة سهير سعيدة أننا سمعناها ونحن كنا سعداء لمساعدتها !

II Language Functions

1 To ask and answer about the weather :

١. للسؤال والإجابة عن حالة الطقس :

• In the present simple tense

في زمن المضارع البسيط

What **is** the weather like **today** ?

It is + حالة الطقس



What is the weather like today ?

ما هي حالة الطقس اليوم ؟

It is **hot** and **sunny**.

إنه حار ومشمس.



• In the past simple tense

في زمن الماضي البسيط

What **was** the weather like **yesterday** ?

It was + حالة الطقس



What was the weather like

yesterday? ماذا كانت حالة الطقس أمس ؟

It was **rainy**.

كان الجو ممطر.



2 To talk about your favorite weather/season :

٢. للتحدث عن حالة الطقس / فصل السنة المفضلة لديك :



What's your favorite weather ?

ما هو الطقس المفضل لديك ؟

My favorite weather is rainy weather.

الطقس المفضل لدى هو الطقس الممطر.



III Language focus

1 Adverbs of frequency

١. ظروف التكرار



1 We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

◀ تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات التي نقوم فيها بفعل الأشياء.

- - I **always** go to the club on sunny Saturdays.
- He **never** goes to the park in the rain.

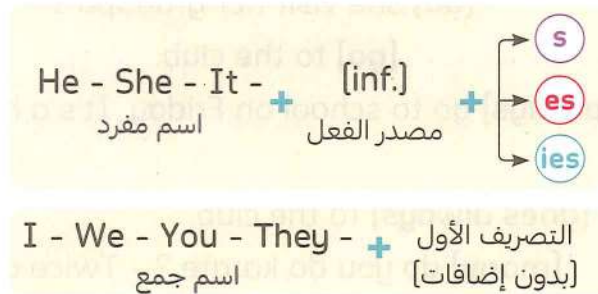
2 Adverbs of frequency come before the main verb or after [verb to be] in the sentence.

◀ تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد "verb to be" في الجملة.

Subject	Adverb of frequency	Main verb	Rest of sentence
I	always	watch	TV at night.
Subject	Verb to "be"	Adverb of frequency	Rest of sentence
She	is	never	late for work.

- - We **usually** go out on Fridays. [قبل الفعل الأساسي]
- We **are never** late for school. [بعد verb to be]

Remember : The Present Simple Tense : زمن المضارع البسيط :



2 How often ? كم مرة...؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما في زمن المضارع البسيط :

How often + $\frac{\text{do} + \text{I - we - you - they - اسم جمع}}{\text{does} + \text{he - she - it - اسم مفرد}}$ + [inf.] ?
مصدر الفعل

للإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار الآتية :

always / usually / often / sometimes / never

- ▶ - How often **do** you walk to school ?
- I **never** walk to school.
- ▶ - How often **does** he do his homework in the evening ?
- He **always** does his homework in the evening.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

▶ Read and write the correct form of the word [s] between brackets.

1. Do you [play usually] tennis on weekends ?
2. She usually [have] a shower in the morning.
3. How [much] does Noha play video games ? - Twice a week.
4. She [gets always] a sandwich from this restaurant.
5. She is [always] late. She arrives early every day.
6. [What] often do you play football ?
7. They [never are] late for school.
8. How often [do] she visit her grandpa ?
9. She sometimes [go] to the club.
10. I [always] go to school on Friday. It's a holiday.
11. He [goes always] to the club.
12. How [many] do you do karate ? - Twice a week.

(القاهرة - هليوبوليس ٢٠٢٤)

(البحيرة - حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٤)

(الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)

Notes for parents

Help your child use "How often ... ?" to ask about frequency.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم "How often ... ؟" بمعنى "كم مرة ... ؟" للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث.

General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Hala has a every day.
a. shower b. snack c. strawberry d. sandwich
2. Hala enjoys a book.
a. writing b. reading c. drawing d. buying
3. Hala always visits her grandparents on
a. Fridays b. Mondays c. Saturdays d. Tuesdays
4. Hala helps her mom in the kitchen.
a. usually b. always c. sometimes d. never

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. A is when the temperature goes very high.
a. storm b. sandstorm c. heat wave d. flood
2. The strong makes the trees move left and right.
a. heat b. shade c. wind d. cry
3. Mom closed all the windows because of the
a. rainbow b. sandstorm c. wildlife d. ecosystem
4. The destroyed many houses in the town.
a. flood b. shade c. temperature d. storm

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. cool - How - keep - do - a heat wave - you - in ?
.....

2. strawberries - does - How - she - often - eat ?
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We [grow always] mangoes in our garden.
2. How often do you [making] dinner ?

• **5 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Yesterday, I went to the store with my friend Sara. We went there to buy some fruits, watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down because it was very hot. The temperature was very high, it was above 40 degrees celcius, so we came back on the shady side of the street.

As we were passing our grandma's house, we heard a cry. My grandma is 65 years old and lives with my uncle, but he goes to work in the day. We were worried because the door was a bit open. My grandma was on the floor ! Sara helped me get my grandma onto a chair. We gave her lots of water. We were happy when we could help her.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "store" has the same meaning as
a. market b. office c. school d. club
2. When they heard a cry, they were
a. happy b. angry c. worried d. calm

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did they come back on the shady side of the street ?
.....

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

i usually get up early
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A heat wave

Guiding elements :

- What's the weather like in the heat wave ?
- What should we do in the heat wave ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



I

Pronunciation

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

1 To distinguish between /b/ and /p/. ا. للتمييز بين /b/ و /p/.

- We make the sounds /p/ and /b/ at the front of our mouths, by pressing our lips together. But they are very different.

ننطق الأصوات /p/ و /b/ في مقدمة أفواهنا، بالضغط على شفاهنا معًا. لكنهم مختلفون تمامًا.

/p/ "unvoiced sound"

The air comes out of our mouth when we say it.

الهواء يخرج من أفواهنا عندما نقوله.

Try to:

حاول أن:

- Put a piece of paper in front of your mouth.

ضع قطعة من الورق أمام فمك.

- Say the sound /p/. قل صوت /p/.

تتحرك الورقة.

- The paper moves.

تتحرك الورقة.

/b/ "voiced sound"

Try to:

حاول أن:

- Put a piece of paper in front of your mouth.

ضع قطعة من الورق أمام فمك.

- Say the sound /b/.

قل صوت /b/.

- The paper doesn't move.

لا تتحرك الورقة.

/b/



bull ثور



bear دب



bee نحلة



beach شاطئ

/p/



pull يسحب



pear كمثرى



pea بازلاء



peach خوخة

- Help your child read and learn the difference between /p/ and /b/ sounds.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم الفرق بين أصوات /p/ و /b/.

- Help your child listen to the words that have /p/, /b/ sounds and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات /p/ و /b/ ويرددها.

2 The silent letters in words

٢. الحروف الصامتة في الكلمات

In English there are some words with silent letters - letters we don't pronounce. في اللغة الإنجليزية توجد بعض الكلمات ذات الحروف الصامتة - الحروف التي لا ننطقها.

silent "b" : clim**b** يتسلق



lamb**b** حمل [حروف صغير]



silent "w" : w**r**ite يكتب



w**r**ist معصم / رسغ



two رقم ٢



answ**e**r إجابة / رد



silent "k" : kn**i**fe سكين



kn**e**e ركبة



silent "h" : h**o**ur ساعة



silent "t" : cast**l**e قلعة



silent "s" : is**l**and جزيرة



silent "g" : sign لافتة



II Listening script

He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky - he had a knife so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him !



Notes for parents

• Help your child learn some words with silent letters.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم بعض الكلمات التي بها حروف صامتة.



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and tick (✓) the words with silent letter.

1. school ☐

2. beach ☐

3. knife ☐

4. wrist ☐

5. lamb ☐

6. island ☐

7. pea ☐

8. pen ☐

2 Listen and circle.

1. peach

2. pull

3. bee

4. bear

beach

bull

pea

pear

3 Read and circle the silent letters in each word.

1. hour

2. write

3. sign

4. island

5. castle

6. lamb

4 Look, read and circle.

1. It's a [bear / pear].



2. There's a [bee / pea] on the flower.



3. I like to eat [beaches / peaches].



4. I use the [knee / knife] to cut fruit.



1. Ask your child to listen and tick (✓) the words with silent letters.

2. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct word.

3. Ask your child to read and circle the silent letters in each word.

4. Ask your child to look, read and circle the correct answer.



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

tornado	إعصار	dark	مظلم/داكن	electric wires	أسلاك كهرباء
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	candles	شموع	power cut	انقطاع التيار الكهربائي
flood	فيضان	unsafe	غير آمن	lightning	البرق
extreme heat / cold	شديد الحرارة/البرودة	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية	torch	كشاف

• Extra vocabulary

classmate	زميل الدراسة	closer	أقرب	event	حادثة / حدث
wide	عريض / واسع	afraid/scared	خائف	tip	نصيحة
building	مبنى	scarf	وشاح	air-conditioning	تكييف هواء
might	ربما	frightening	مخيف/مرعب	shut	مغلق
clothing	ملابس	leaflet	منشور	extreme weather	الطقس القاسي
account	تقرير - قصة	light	خفيف - ضوء		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
destroy	يدمر	hurt	يؤذي / يجرح
twist	يلتوي/يلتف	drive	يقود
protect	يحمي	stand	يقف
contact	يتصل	strike	يضرب / يصعق
		hit	يصدم
destroyed		hurt	
twisted		drove	
protected		stood	
contacted		struck	
		hit	

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• get dark	يحل الظلام	• move away	يتحرك بعيدًا
• as much as possible	قدر الإمكان	• get bigger	يكبر / تزداد حجمًا
• bits of	قطع من / أجزاء من	• turn off	يطفئ
• extreme weather event	حدث طقس قاسي	• keeping safe	البقاء بأمان
		• heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Extreme weather	tornado	The tornado was a very big, wide, black cloud.
	destroy	The tornado hurt a lot of people and destroyed many homes.
	sand – sandstorm	There was a lot of sand in the air outside, it was a sandstorm.
	difficult – see	It was very difficult to see in a sandstorm.



Pop Quiz on vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. It's not safe to touch the
a. tables b. electric wires c. boots d. jewelry
2. is very important on hot days.
a. Flood b. Sandstorm c. Air-conditioning d. Light
3. The tornado scares me. It is
a. fantastic b. frightening c. wonderful d. nice

II

Listening and Reading

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Extreme weather in England ?

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the tornado and it was very frightening.

لقد كنت في المدرسة مع زملائي، ثم بدأ يحل الظلام. ذهبنا للخارج ثم رأيت الإعصار وكان مخيفًا للغاية.

It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses!

حيث أنه كان مثل سحابة سوداء كبيرة وعريضة. عندما اقترب منا الإعصار كان يزداد حجمه وكان يلتف. وتمكننا من رؤية أشياء داخله، مثل الأبواب وأجزاء من المنازل!

When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

عندما اقترب منا، أصبح أكثر اتساعًا وأكثر ظلامًا. في اليوم التالي، اكتشفنا أن الإعصار أصاب الكثير من الناس، ودمر العديد من المنازل والمباني الأخرى.



Tornado

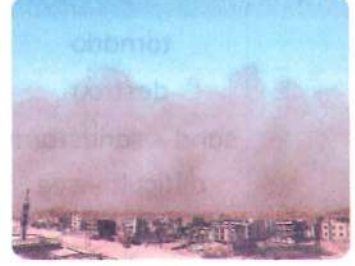
• Help your child to look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

An account of an extreme event

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!



Sandstorm

ذات يوم كنت أنا وعائلتي نسير بالسيارة عبر الصحراء لزيارة أبناء عمومي. بعد مرور عشرين دقيقة نظرت من النافذة ورأيت عاصفة رملية. بعد قليل كان هناك الكثير من الرمال في الهواء خارج السيارة وكانت الرؤية صعبة. أغلقنا كل النوافذ لكن الجو كان مظلمًا جدًا. كانت هناك سيارات أخرى على الطريق. هل كانت تلك السيارات ستصدمنا؟ لقد كنت خائفًا جدًا. حرك أبي السيارة بعيدًا عن الطريق وتوقفنا. لم نرى أي سيارات على الطريق لكن العاصفة الرملية تحركت ببطء شديد. ثم فجأة تحركت العاصفة الرملية بعيدًا. ورأينا الشمس مرة أخرى وصرنا بالسيارة عبر الصحراء!

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Tips for keeping safe

نصائح للحفاظ على سلامتك

In extreme heat في الحرارة الشديدة

- Eat small, light meals. تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة.
- Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning. حاول قضاء وقت في المباني الباردة التي بها تكييف للهواء.
- Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty. اشرب الكثير من الماء حتى إن كنت لا تشعر بالعطش.
- Wear light, cool clothing. ارتدى ملابس خفيفة ومنعشة.
- Open the windows when there's a cool wind. افتح النوافذ عندما تكون هناك رياح منعشة.
- Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade. لا تذهب للخارج. إذا كنت مضطر للذهاب للخارج، ابق في الظل.

Notes for parents

- Help your child to listen and read the text.
- Help your child read and identify tips for keeping safe.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على نصائح الحفاظ على سلامته.

In a sandstorm العاصفة الرملية

- Wear a scarf to protect your face. ارتدى وشاح لتحمي وجهك.
- Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth. ابق بالداخل حتى لا تدخل الرمال في فمك.
- If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car. إذا كنت تقوم بالقيادة حاول الوصول إلى جانب الطريق حتى تتمكن من إيقاف سيارتك.
- If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in. إذا كنت بالمنزل تأكد من أن النوافذ مغلقة حتى لا تدخل الرمال للداخل.
- Cover your head and face as much as possible. قم بتغطية رأسك ووجهك بقدر الإمكان.
- Turn off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in. اغلق مكيف الهواء للحد من دخول الرمال.

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

How to keep safe in a storm

What might happen in a storm ?

ماذا يمكن أن يحدث في العاصفة ؟

- There might be very strong winds. ربما تكون هناك رياح قوية.
- There might be heavy rain and lightning. ربما تكون هناك أمطار غزيرة وبرق.
- It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall. قد لا يكون من الأمان أن تخرج فربما تسقط أسلاك الكهرباء.
- There might be a power cut. ربما يحدث انقطاع في التيار الكهربائي.
- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help. الناس في الشارع ، المنازل أو السيارات ربما يحتاجون لمساعدتك.

How can you protect yourself ?

كيف تستطيع حماية نفسك ؟

- Stay inside and keep dry. ابقى بالداخل واحرص أن تكون جاف.
- Make sure you have candles and torches - there might be a power cut. تأكد أن يكون لديك شموع وكشافات - ربما يكون هناك انقطاع التيار الكهربائي.
- Contact your friends and family to check they're safe. تواصل مع أصدقائك وعائلتك لتتأكد أنهم بخير.
- Don't go anywhere by train - this could be unsafe. لا تذهب إلى أي مكان بالقطار - فربما يكون ذلك غير آمن.
- Help anyone who is afraid. ساعد أي شخص يشعر بالخوف.
- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes. لا تقف أسفل الأشجار في حالة حدوث صواعق البرق.
- Don't stand near wires - they could fall and give you an electric shock. لا تقف بالقرب من الأسلاك - ربما تسقط وتصيبك بصدمة كهربائية.

• Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises | on Lessons 4&5

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- To stay safe during a sandstorm, wear a to protect your face.
a. dress b. shirt c. scarf d. skirt
- Stay inside, so the can't get in your mouth.
a. water b. sand c. rain d. clouds
- Make sure your are shut, so no sand can get in.
a. doors b. computers c. shops d. windows
- Turn off to stop the sand coming in.
a. air-conditioning b. video games c. television d. lights

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- She saw in the sky when it was raining.
a. candles b. lightning c. wires d. shade
- When there is a power cut, I use my
a. gloves b. torch c. tie d. calendar
- There was a lot of sand in the air because of the
a. flood b. rain c. lightning d. sandstorm
- The tornado was around.
a. stopping b. twisting c. reading d. wearing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

meals - clothing - mouth - air-conditioning - shade

There are some tips for keeping safe in extreme heat. You should wear light, cool [1] Try to spend time in cool buildings with [2] If you must go outside, stay in the [3] Eat small, light [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, Hala and her family were driving through the desert to visit her cousins. After twenty minutes, she looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Hala was really **scared**. Her father moved the car off the road and they stopped. They didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. They saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about the ".....".

- a. Tornado b. Sandstorm c. Flood d. Lightning

2. The underlined word "scared" means ".....".

- a. happy b. angry c. afraid d. excited

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How did Hala and her family stop the sand from coming in ?

.....

4. Why were Hala and her family driving through the desert ?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. might - very - There - strong - be - winds.

.....

2. cover - In - face - your - and head - a sandstorm, .

.....

6 Punctuate the following.

drink lots of water when it's hot

.....

7 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

How to keep safe in a storm

Guiding elements :

- electric shock
- power cut

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

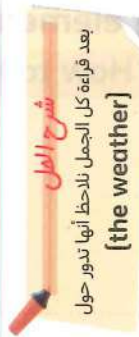
التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

Step 1

Read and learn how to answer:

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. In Egypt. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperature can go down to around 12 °C. It doesn't often rain in Cairo.



- The text is about
 Or : The main/general idea of the text is about
 Or : The text talks about
 Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
 a. Animals b. Weather c. Food d. Water

Step 2

Read and answer the questions :

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins and an extreme weather event happened. I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was very dark.

- The text is about
 Or : The main/general idea of the text is about
 Or : The text talks about
 Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
 a. Extreme weather b. Cool weather
 c. Hot weather d. Nice weather

2

Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.
- ◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Review

always / usually / often / never / sometimes	يمكن استخدام ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط.
Subj. ظرف تكرر + main verb Subj. ظرف تكرر + am/is/are + فاعل	تستخدم الظروف قبل الفعل الرئيسي وتستخدم بعد am/is/are
How often do + [I/you/we/they/جمع] How often does + [he/she/it/مفرد]	للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل نستخدم [How often] وللإجابة نستخدم [ظروف التكرار]

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 We [go always] to the park on Fridays.	always go	الظرف يكون قبل الفعل الرئيسي
2 They [never are] late for school.	are never	الظرف يكون بعد are
3 How [old] do you study ? - I always study.	often	نستخدم [How often] للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل.
4 He never [go] to the park.	goes	يضاف للفعل [s/es] مع He

Practice

Write the Reason :

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 How often [do] she play tennis ?	does	.....
2 How often [does] you get up early ?	do	.....
3 I [play often] tennis on Saturdays.	often play	.....
4 She never [eat] shawerma.	eats	.....
5 I [always am] happy to visit my aunt.	am always	.....

Write the Correction :

◀ اكتب التصحيح

1 How often [do] your mom make cakes ?	.....	نستخدم [does] مع [المفرد]
2 She [eats never] red meat.	.....	الظرف يكون قبل الفعل الرئيسي
3 Ola [usually is] tired after work.	.....	الظرف يكون بعد [is]
4 How often [does] they read books ?	.....	نستخدم [do] مع [they]
5 She [always] cooks lunch. She can't cook.	.....	الجملة تعني أنها لا تستطيع الطهي

3

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1	has - The desert - a very - climate - special.
2	was - It - a very - day - hot.
3	never - He - to - goes - the park .
4	driving - were - We - the desert - through.
5	need - might - People - help - your.
6	stayed - We - the shade - in.
7	to - went - We - the store.
8	very - was - It - dark.
9	always - I - our balcony - on - sit.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة.
We	have	a nice weather.
	never goes	
		through the desert.
	might need	
	always sit	

٢ الجملة الأمرية

1	light - small, - Eat - meals.
2	water - lots - Drink - of.
3	go - Don't - by - anywhere - train.
4	stand - Don't - wires - near.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة.
Don't	drink	cola.
	go	

٣ الجملة الاستفهامية

1	does - What - like - it- look ?
2	you - do - How often - your uncle - visit ?
3	you- How - do - cool - keep ?
4	is - What - weather - favorite - your ?

1	2	3	4	5
What	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
What	can	you	do	yourself?
			look	
	do			

4

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢١ جملة].

1 The weather in Egypt

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt^[1]. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C^[2]! Our winters are cooler^[3]. The temperatures can go down to around 12 °C^[4]. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights^[5].

2 Tornado

The tornado is very dangerous^[6]. It's a very big, wide, black cloud^[7]. It can destroy many homes^[8]. It can hurt a lot of people^[9]. The tornado is frightening^[10].

3 How to protect yourself in a storm

In a storm, you have to keep yourself safe^[11]. Stay inside and keep dry^[12]. Make sure you have candles and torches^[13]. Don't stand near wires^[14]. Don't go anywhere by train^[15]. Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes^[16].

4 How to keep safe in extreme heat

In extreme heat, we should drink lots of water, even if we don't feel thirsty^[17]. We should open the windows when there's a cool wind^[18]. We should wear light, cool clothing^[19]. We should try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning^[20]. We shouldn't go outside in hot weather^[21].

Review on Unit 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة السادسة في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم
wind	رياح
snow	جليد
rainbow	قوس قزح
rain	مطر - تمطر
storm	عاصفة
sunny	مشمس
ice	ثلج
tornado	إعصار
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
power cut	انقطاع التيار
flood	فيضان
heat wave	موجة حارة
shade	ظل
summer	فصل الصيف
winter	فصل الشتاء

Phonics

1. / b /

bull - bear - beach

/ p /

pull - pear - peach

2. silent letters

climb - hour - wrist - knife -
island - castle

Language

1 Adverbs of frequency.



- - I **always** eat breakfast.
- They are **always** helpful.
- He **never** walks to school.

2 How often ... ?

كم مرة ؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما في زمن المضارع البسيط :

How often + **do** + subj. + [inf.]
does + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل ؟

- - How often do you walk to school ?
- * I **always** walk to school.
- * We **never** walk to school.

Test 11 on Unit 6

• نصوص الاستماع
• فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- Last week, Sara and her were driving in the desert.
a. mother b. father c. sister d. aunt
- Sara saw a/an
a. animal b. cloud c. wave d. sandstorm
- There was a lot of , so they had to stop the car.
a. sand b. paper c. water d. salt
- They tried to return back, but they couldn't in the storm.
a. run b. see c. walk d. jump

2 Choose the the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- When it rains a lot, there is a
a. sandstorm b. heat wave c. flood d. cloud
- Today, there is a I feel the heat of the sun.
a. storm b. sandstorm c. tidal wave d. heat wave
- In hot weather, you must stay in the
a. desert b. shade c. sun d. sand
- He wears sunglasses to his eyes.
a. see b. lose c. protect d. plant

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

store – shade – heard – past – floor

It was a very hot day. Dareen and Roqia were at home. Dareen's mom asked them to go to the ^[1] to buy some fruits. They walked in the ^[2] to be away from the sunshine. They were on the street and ^[3] a cry from Mrs Abeer's house. When they went in, they found Mrs Abeer on the ^[4] in the kitchen. Mr Maged and the girls helped Mrs Abeer get better.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sara was at school with her classmates. Then it started to get dark. They went outside. Then Sara saw the tornado and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near them, it was getting bigger. They could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses!

When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. It was moving slowly, and it was damaging buildings. The next day, they found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is ".....".
a. Tornado b. Heat wave c. Sandstorm d. Water
2. The underlined word "destroyed" means ".....".
a. helped b. damaged c. moved d. came

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What things could Sara see in the tornado ?

.....

4. How was the tornado dangerous for many people?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. lots of – water – Drink – extreme – heat – in.

.....

2. yesterday – like – was – What – the – weather ?

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. How often [do] she eat shawerma ?

2. Noha [always is] in bed at 10 p.m.

7 Punctuate the following.

how do we keep cool in a heat wave

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

How to keep safe in a sandstorm

Guiding elements :

- wear a scarf
- air-conditioning

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 12 on Unit 6

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- In a storm, you have to keep yourself
a. strong b. weak c. giant d. safe
- Make sure you have candles and
a. radio b. mobile c. torches d. TV
- There might be a cut.
a. blood b. power c. clothes d. oil
- Don't go anywhere by This could be unsafe.
a. train b. bus c. plane d. car [القاهرة/ الشروق ٢٠٢٤]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The desert in Egypt has a very weather. [كفر الشيخ / دسوق ٢٠٢٤]
a. small b. special c. ugly d. large
- The made me stay at home yesterday. It was very strong. [المنوفية/بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤]
a. rainbow b. storm c. cloud d. tree
- When there's lots of water in the streets, it's a
[اسيوط / ديروط ٢٠٢٤]
a. tornado b. heat wave c. flood d. sandstorm
- In extreme heat, spend time in cool buildings with
[القاهرة / الوايلي ٢٠٢٤]
a. sofas b. desks c. wheelchairs d. air- conditioning

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

climate - cold - hot - winters - rainy

Egypt has a nice variety of weather. It is usually very [1] in deserts. In Egypt, we have hot summers. Our [2] are cooler in Egypt. The desert has a very special [3] with very hot days and very [4] nights. [أسيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt has a nice variety of weather, although the weather is usually very dry. Alexandria is the most rainy city in Egypt. It doesn't often rain in Cairo. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees. Our winters are cooler and temperature can go down to around 12 degrees. Tourists come from all over the world to enjoy our beautiful weather.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "The in Egypt".
a. weather b. food c. cities d. tourists
2. The weather in Egypt is usually very
a. wet b. dry c. rainy d. cold

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

4. Why do tourists come to Egypt ?
.....

(المنيا - بنى مزار ٢٠٢٤)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the desert - dry - in - is - usually - It . (السويس / جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٣)

2. Eat - meals - small, - light - hot weather - in. (الإسكندرية / برج العرب ٢٠٢٣)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Emad always [speak] English very well. (الفيوم/يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٤)

2. How often [does] you walk to school ? (الدقهلية/ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)

7 Punctuate the following.

- i always have lunch at home (الشرقية / ههيا ٢٠٢٣)

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The weather in Egypt

Guiding elements :

- special climate
- variety of weather

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(بورسعيد / بور فؤاد ٢٠٢٣)

4. Temperature in winter is around degrees.

- a. 12 b. 38 c. 14

5. It is usually very in the desert.

- a. rainy b. dry c. cold

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We stayed in the to avoid the hot sunshine.

- a. summer b. storm c. shade d. heat

2. There might be a power cut, make sure you have

- a. wires b. torches c. umbrellas d. chairs

3. I'm never late for our English class. I'm on time.

- a. often b. usually c. always d. never

4. My sister often a book in the evenings.

- a. reads b. reading c. is reading d. to read

5. The destroyed many homes and other buildings.

- a. tornado b. stars c. flowers d. cloud

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. of water - Drink - heat - in - lots - extreme.

2. your - season - is - favorite - What ?

3. has - climate - The - special - desert - a very.

4. is - rainy - It - today.

5. often - do - TV - How - you - watch ?

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. It's going to be in Cairo.

[rainy - windy - sunny]

2. It's never very cold in

[Luxor - Alexandria - Sharm El-Sheikh]

3. Stay at because of a storm in Luxor.

[home - school - street]

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

protect - electric - shock - winds

Amany : Do you know what happens in a storm ?

Reham : Yes, I do. There might be very strong [1]

Amany : Can we go outside in a storm ?

Reham : No. It might not be safe because [2]

wires could fall.

Amany : How can we [3] ourselves ?

Reham : We shouldn't stand near electric wires - they could

give us an electric [4]

3 Read and answer the questions.

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry in the desert. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places.

Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 °C. It doesn't often rain in Cairo.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. How is the summer in Egypt ?

2. Does it often rain in Cairo ?

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. We have a variety of weather in Egypt.

- a. nice b. long c. high

Review 2 | on Units 4,5 & 6

I Vocabulary

fables	أساطير	patient	صبور	path	طريق
moral	مغزى القصة	knock	يضرب / يطرق	traveler	مسافر

II Reading texts

• Review 2 / Lesson 2

Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories called **fables**^[1] - they always had a **moral**^[2]. A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people. An example of a moral is : Be kind and **patient**^[3] with people.

- [1] أساطير
- [2] مغزى القصة
- [3] صبور

• Review 2 / Lesson 2

The North Wind was trying to make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than you." He looked down and blew. He **knocked**^[1] over some trees on a **path**^[2]. "I'm not so sure you're stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling.

- [1] يضرب - يصطدم
- [2] طريق
- [3] يخلع
- [4] مسافر
- [5] تشرق

At that moment, a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind, "OK, let's see. Who can make the man **take off**^[3] his coat?" "Hmm," the Wind said. "Of course I'm going to win". He looked down at the **traveler**^[4] and he blew and blew. The man felt the Wind and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter around him. He didn't let the Wind blow off his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped. Then the Sun came out and began to **shine**^[5]. "Oh dear!" said the man "It's so hot!" He got so hot, he took off his coat. "That's better", he said. The Sun looked at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew away !

Notes for parents

The moral of the story:

- Sometimes you can get people to do things by being clever, not by being strong.

مغزى القصة:

• أحياناً يمكنك أن تجعل الأشخاص يقومون بفعل أشياء بذكاءك وليس بقوتك.

Monthly Assessments

October Test

اختبار شهر أكتوبر

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص
الاستماع
فى نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian player.
a. tennis b. football c. taekwondo d. basketball
- She started practicing taekwondo at the age of
a. 7 b. 8 c. 9 d. 6
- Hedaya Malak won the medal at the Rio Olympics .
a. gold b. silver c. bronze d. statues
- She carried the Egyptian flag at the Olympic Games .
a. Rio b. Tokyo c. London d. Rome

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The of basbousa are semolina, sugar and some honey.
a. ingredients b. causes c. effects d. reasons
- Gases from cars and factories are
a. useful b. toxic c. healthy d. boring
- The farmer uses his to cut the wood.
a. cage b. axe c. spoon d. fork
- We use milk to make
a. honey b. yogurt c. nuts d. grapes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

favorites – club – football – playing – eating

We are watching a squash match. I love squash and I'm good at [1] tennis, too. My brother is good at playing [2] in a team. My mom's [3] are sailing and handball. My brother and I play many sports in the [4] In Egypt, we have many kinds of sports.

• **4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Hi, I'm Sandy. My mom and I like to make our shopping list together. I love going to the market with her. We will buy some vegetables. We need tomatoes, onions and cucumbers. My mom will make a delicious salad. My little brother, Peter, likes chocolate. I will buy only one bar for him because eating a lot of chocolate isn't healthy. My favorite healthy food is apples. I think I will buy some apples and some bananas for myself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My mom and I like to make our together.
a. lunch b. shopping list c. breakfast d. dinner
2. The underlined word "delicious" means the food tastes
a. hot b. good c. boring d. unhealthy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What will Sandy and her mom buy to make a salad?
.....
4. What's Peter's favorite food? Is it healthy to eat a lot of it?
.....

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. market - sells - onions - He - at - the.
.....
2. is - favorite - What - your - fruit?
.....

• **6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets**

1. She bought a racket to [played] tennis.
2. They didn't find [some] bread in the fridge.

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

will you come to the market with me
.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.**

Your favorite sport

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- good at
- practice

.....

.....

.....

.....

Monthly Assessments

November Test

اختبار شهر نوفمبر

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Sara was on Elephantine Island last
a. year b. month c. week d. summer
- Sara went there with her
a. family b. cousins c. friends d. uncles
- Sara traveled by to the island.
a. bus b. taxi c. boat d. train
- Elephantine Island is in
a. Luxor b. Aswan c. Al Fayoum d. Taba

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- I put all my clothes in the [بنى سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٤]
a. sneakers b. suitcase c. necklace d. pool
- Eco-tourism helps to the wildlife.
a. protect b. build c. buy d. ask
- Tourists dive in the Red Sea to see the reefs. [بورشيد ٢٠٢٤]
a. sharks b. plants c. rocks d. coral
- There is no , so the island is very quiet.
a. farm b. river c. traffic d. lake

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

poor – workshop – morning – hard – shoes

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in a town with his wife. They were very [1]....., but they were happy. The shoemaker worked [2]....., but he had no money. One night, the shoemaker was in his [3]..... He had only got enough leather for one more pair of [4]..... [بنى سويف - سمسطا ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear green skirts and the boys wear green trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our green sweaters. My cousin's school uniform is really smart. We go to school at 7 in the morning.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about ".....".
 a. Students b. School uniforms
 c. School subjects d. Teachers
2. My cousin's school uniform is really.....
 a. cool b. bad c. smart d. nice

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What color are the trousers the boys wear ?

4. When do they go to school ?

(پورسعيد ۲۰۲۴)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is – important – **Tourism** – very – Egypt – for.

2. yesterday - **Where** - go - your - did - brother ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. How **[much]** do you visit your grandparents ? – Twice a month.

2. We **(must)** sleep in the classroom.

7 Punctuate the following.

how does tourism help Egypt

• **8** Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your visit to Elephantine Island

Guiding elements :

- How did you go there ?

- Who did you go with ?

[بني سويف - الفشن ٢٠٢٤]



Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع
الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 1

Lesson 1:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Donia and Sara are friends. They like different kinds of food. Donia's favorite food is chocolate. Chocolate is unhealthy. She likes chicken, fish and rice. Sara likes fruits and vegetables. Sara's favorite fruit is mango. Mango is healthy. Sara and Donia have dinner together on Fridays.

Lesson 2:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Huda. I really like visiting my grandma's house. My grandma has a mango tree in her garden. She has got a lemon tree, too. We usually have fresh lemons and mangoes from her garden. My grandma usually makes coconut mahalabia for us.

Lesson 3:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Jack went to the market to sell his cow. On his way, he met an old man who was selling beans. Jack wasn't interested in buying the beans, but Jack bought the beans at last.

Lessons 4 & 5:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My favorite fruit is mangoes. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with mangoes. We can make delicious mango juice. I usually use mangoes to make a fruit salad. Mango is healthy and all the family loves it. We have a mango tree in our grandpa's garden.

Test [1] on Unit [1]:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. You need to turn on the oven to get it hot. Mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. Add yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake it in the oven for 30 minutes. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa and cut it.

Test [2] on Unit [1]:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Fruits grow in Egypt. My grandfather has a farm. He grows orange trees. He has chickens. He collects fresh eggs every day. He waters the plants and feeds the animals.

Al-Azhar listening text:

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

I love chocolate. Chocolate is unhealthy if we eat it a lot. I also like chicken and fish. But my favorite is potatoes. My mother buys potatoes at the market.



Unit 2

Lesson 1 Part 1:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Ahmed and Omar are friends. Ahmed is good at football. He usually plays football at the club. Omar likes watching matches on TV. Ahmed and Omar go to the sports club on Fridays.

Lesson 2

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I am Hani. Sami and Kareem are my friends at school. They like music. Sami

is good at playing the piano. Kareem is good at singing, but he's bad at playing chess.

Lesson 3

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Sara likes sports. She loves kicking a ball in a team with her friends. Her friend Dina is good at karate. Dina isn't good at playing volleyball.

Lessons 4 & 5 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs to win a competition. She won many prizes.

Test [3] on Unit [2] :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Sherif Osman is a famous athlete. He won many prizes. He can compete in important competitions. He wants to win new medals in the future. His sport is weightlifting. He spends many hours training every day.

Test [4] on Unit [2] :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Air is important for us to breathe and live. We need clean air to breathe. We go to the hospital when we breathe toxic air. The air can get dirty because of the emissions of cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs to breathe toxic air.

Al-Azhar listening text :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I like to play football on the pitch. I wear my football boots to play with my friends. My sister always goes swimming in the pool. She uses her goggles to

protect her eyes. My brother uses his racket to play squash.



Unit 3

Lesson 1

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Nesma has two brothers, Youssef and Wael. Youssef went to the shopping mall yesterday. He bought some striped pajamas. Nesma went to the park and took her spotted umbrella. Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.

Lesson 2 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Samar and Aya are best friends. They are in the park today. Samar is wearing a blue dress with white flowers on it. Aya is wearing a hat on her head. They are sitting on the grass and having a picnic.

Lessons 4 & 5 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Our school uniform is smart. We wear a white shirt and blue trousers. We have to wear a blue striped tie. In winter, we wear dark blue sweaters. In summer, we can wear green shorts.

Test [5] on Unit [3] :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Mona goes to the party with her sister. Mona is wearing as a princess. Mona has white gloves on her hands. Mona has a crown on her head. Mona is wearing a striped dress.

Test [6] on Unit [3]:

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Our school uniform is smart. The boys and girls have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. They wear white shirts. We've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. We all like our school. We play football with our friends at school.

Al-Azhar listening text:

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero. It's a traditional Mexican hat. There are lots of different styles of sombrero.



General Exercises on Units 1, 2 & 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the top of the beanstalk, he saw a castle. Jack went inside the castle and saw a very big giant. The big giant was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the floor. Next to the hen were some golden eggs.



Unit 4

Lessons 1&2:

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Elephantine Island is one of the most fantastic places in Egypt. It is in Aswan. It is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history. Yesterday, I went to the island with my friends by boat. It is really a beautiful place.

Lesson 3:

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada and he tells tourists where they can dive. Normal tourism damages the natural environment, but eco tourism doesn't.

Lessons 4 & 5:

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday. If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

Test [7] on Unit [4]:

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tourism is very important to many countries. It gives jobs for local people. It helps people learn about new cultures. Sometimes it damages the natural environment. Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.

Test [8] on Unit [4]:

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Taba is an exciting place in Egypt. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba. Eco-tourists can go and enjoy the environment. The local people in Taba are very friendly. Eco-tourists can talk to the local people about their culture.

Al-Azhar listening text:

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. If you like history, there's lots to see there. You can find a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.



Unit 5

Lesson 1:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. Farmers planted crops like wheat, corn and flax. Craftsmen used to weave clothes and make cooking pots. Traders traveled up and down the Nile buying and selling goods. Women could weave baskets, make sandals and sell them at the market.

Lesson 2:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Ali works in a restaurant. He drives to work at 10 am. He checks the menu and makes sure they have the right food. His boss asks him to prepare the vegetables. He cuts the vegetables with a sharp knife.

Lesson 3:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

The ant and the grasshopper are friends. They live together in the garden. The ant always works hard but the grasshopper is lazy. He spends most of his time relaxing. He thinks working is boring.

Lessons 4 & 5:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I am Reem. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick, I help to make them better. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very clean.

Test [9] on Unit [5]:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Sara and Rana are friends. Sara loves animals and she wants to be a vet. Rana

doesn't like animals. Animals scare her. Rana likes computer games and she wants to be a computer programmer. Rana enjoys solving problems.

Test [10] on Unit [5]:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

People in Ancient Egypt had different jobs. Farmers grew crops like wheat, corn, and flax. Craftsmen made beautiful paintings. Scribes learned to read and write hieroglyphs. Learning hieroglyphs was expensive and took many years.

Al-Azhar listening text:

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

People worked very hard in Ancient Egypt. Traders traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen and grains.



Unit 6

Lesson 1:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

The weather in the desert of Egypt is very special. The desert in Egypt has very hot days and very cold nights. People in the desert try to keep cool in the day. They try to keep warm at night.

Lesson 2:

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Hala. I usually get up late. I have a shower every day. I enjoy reading a book. I always visit my grandparents on Saturdays. I sometimes help my mom in the kitchen.

Lesson 3: Pop Quiz on pronunciation

• Listen and tick [✓] the words with silent letter.

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. school | 2. beach |
| 3. knife | 4. wrist |

5. lamb 6. island

7. pea 8. pen

• **Listen and circle.**

1. beach 2. pull

3. pea 4. bear

Lessons 4 & 5 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

To stay safe during a sandstorm, wear a scarf to protect your face. Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your mouth. Drive to the side of the road, so you can stop your car. Make sure your windows are shut, so no sand can get in. Turn off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.

Test [11] on Unit [6] :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Last week, Sara and her father were driving in the desert. It was windy and hot. Sara saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand, so they had to stop the car. The air was full of sand. They tried to return back, but they couldn't see in the storm.

Test [12] on Unit [6] :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

In a storm, you have to keep yourself safe. Stay inside. Make sure you have candles and torches. Contact your friends and family to check they are safe. There might be a power cut. Don't go anywhere by train. This could be unsafe.

Al-Azhar listening text :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Here's the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo. It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice. It's going to be windy in Alexandria. Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home.

October Test :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian teakwondo player. She started practicing teakwondo at the age of seven. Hedaya won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games.

November Test :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

I'm Sara. I was on Elephantine Island last week. I went there with my cousins. Elephantine Island is the most fantastic place. It's in Aswan. I traveled by boat to the island with my cousins. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.



Answers of Topics

إجابات الموضوعات
الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 1

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Your favorite food"

I like to eat different kinds of food. There are healthy food and unhealthy food. I like to eat chocolate, but it is unhealthy. I can't eat a lot of it. My favorite healthy food is fish. Fish is very good for our bodies.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Balanced diet"

I want to have a healthy life so I have a balanced diet. I have breakfast with my family. My breakfast is cheese, milk and bread. They are all healthy foods. I have some vegetables and fruit because they are good for our bodies. I have rice and meat or chicken for lunch. I have cheese and bread for dinner.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Your favorite recipe"

My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. You need to turn on the oven to get it hot. Mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. Add yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake it in the oven for 30 minutes. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa and cut it.

Test [1] on Unit [1]

"Healthy and unhealthy food"

My favorite healthy food is chicken. I like it with some rice and salad. My favorite unhealthy food is chocolate. It isn't healthy because it has a lot of sugar in it. My mother buys chocolate for us, but we don't eat it a lot.

Test [2] on Unit [1]

"Your favorite fruit"

My favorite fruit is mangoes. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with mangoes. We can make delicious mango juice. I usually use mangoes to make a fruit salad. Mango is healthy and all the family love it. We have a mango tree in my grandpa's garden.

Unit 2

General Exercises on Lesson 1 Part 1

"Sports in Egypt"

There are a lot of sports in Egypt. Football, swimming, tennis and squash are the most popular sports. There are a lot of famous football players in Egypt. My sister likes practicing sports. She likes swimming. She usually goes swimming on Fridays.

General Exercises on Lesson 1 Part 2

"What we can do to stop air pollution"

It's important to look after our planet. To do this, we need to protect our air. We can drive our cars less. We can use our bikes more. We should plant trees. We must work hard to do this.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Sports you are good at"

I like practicing many different sports. My favorite sport is football. I am good at playing football. I like playing it in a team. I am good at scoring goals. I am also good at playing squash. I play squash with my friend Ammar.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Sports equipment"

John and Sara have sports equipment. John wears his football boots to play football. Sara wears her swimming goggles to go swimming. They use their squash rackets to play squash. They play tennis on the court. John wears his karate suit to do karate.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"A famous Egyptian athlete"

Sherif Osman is a famous athlete. He won many medals. He competed in important competitions. He wants to win new medals in the future. His favorite sport is weightlifting. He spends many hours training every day.

Test [3] on Unit [2]

"Water pollution"

The harmful chemicals can make water pollution and kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

Test [4] on Unit [2]

"A sport you like"

My favorite sport is swimming. I began learning swimming when I was seven. I love going to the beach and swim in the sea. I wear my swimming goggles and train every day in the swimming pool near my house. Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.

Unit 3

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"A trip to Al Fayoum"

I will go to Al Fayoum next week. My brother Asser and Mom will go with me. We need to pack our suitcase. I will take

my sneakers as we will walk around a lot. Also mom will take her gold necklace. Asser will pack his swimming shorts. We'll swim in their lovely pool.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Clothes"

The Egyptian people wear many traditional clothes. Many men wear the galabeya. This is a long white robe that is very popular. It looks really cool to wear. It's made from cotton and is usually white its sleeves are long, so they don't get sunburned. It has pockets, but they are hidden.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Clothes in Mexico"

Mexican girls like wearing traditional dresses. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Mexican girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. It is called a sombrero. There are lots of different styles of sombrero.

Test [5] on Unit [3]

"Our school uniform"

Our school uniform is smart. We wear a white shirt and blue trousers. We have to wear a blue striped tie. In winter, we wear dark blue sweaters. In summer, we can wear blue shorts.

Test [6] on Unit [3]

"Your favorite clothes"

My favorite clothes are trousers. I like the blue and black trousers. They have two pockets in the front and two pockets in the back. There is a hidden pocket to put coins in it. I love wearing T-shirts with the blue trousers. Trousers are comfortable and good when you are working outdoors.

Unit 4

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

"Elephantine Island"

Last week, we visited Elephantine Island. It is a fantastic place. It's beautiful and calm. It is the oldest part of Aswan. It is full of history. We saw the sunsets and went for long walks there.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Pros and cons of eco-tourism"

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It helps to protect wildlife. It looks after the environment. It helps local people. But eco-tourism isn't as comfortable as normal tourism.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt"

Taba is good for eco-tourism. We can find valleys, desert and the sea there. Eco-tourists can do different activities there. They can enjoy hiking and diving. They can stay in eco-lodges. In Taba, local people are very friendly.

Test [7] on Unit [4]

"A fantastic place in Egypt"

Elephantine Island is one of the most fantastic places in Egypt. It is in Aswan. It is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history. Yesterday, I went to the island with my friends by boat. It is really a beautiful place. We had lunch there.

Test [8] on Unit [4]

"The importance of tourism"

Tourism is very important to a lot of countries. Tourism gives jobs to local people. It helps tourists learn about new cultures. But tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Also tourism damages the historical places

or monuments. Tourists should try eco-tourism because it looks after wildlife, monuments and local people.

Unit 5

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Jobs in Ancient Egypt"

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. Farmers planted crops like wheat, corn and flax. Craftsmen used to weave clothes and make cooking pots. Traders traveled up and down the Nile buying and selling goods. Scribes knew how to read. Women could weave baskets, make sandals and sell them at the market.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Ecosystems"

Everything in the natural world is connected. The connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big like the Amazon rainforest. The living things can be like fish, crabs and seaweed. The non-living things can be like rocks, water, sand and sunlight.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Ants"

Ants work hard. They never stop working. They are clever. Although they are tiny, they are stronger than humans. They work in summer to store food for winter. Really, they are helpful insects because they work in groups.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Your future job"

When I'm older, I want to be a vet because I love animals. I think this is a good job for me because I like helping animals. I'm good at science and I enjoy

doing experiments. I also like to play with animals.

Test [9] on Unit [5]

"Traders in Ancient Egypt"

There were lots of jobs in Ancient Egypt. Traders in Ancient Egypt played an important role. There were lots of goods in Ancient Egypt. These goods were gold, linen and grains. Traders traveled up and down the Nile buying and selling goods.

Test [10] on Unit [5]

"The job of a vet"

A vet is an important job. A vet works with animals. If an animal is sick or injured, a vet helps to make it better. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very clean. A vet goes to people's houses or farms to check on animals. A vet loves animals.

Unit 6

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"A heat wave"

A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees celcius and no one can do anything. We stay in the shade and try to drink lots of water. We should drink a lot of water and fresh juice. We should wear light clothes.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"How to keep safe in a storm"

It's important to protect yourself in a storm. There might be a power cut in a storm. You should have candles. Contact your friends to check they are safe. Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes. Don't stand near wires, they could give you an electric shock.

Test [11] on Unit [6]

"How to keep safe in a sandstorm"

To stay safe during a sandstorm, wear a scarf to protect your face. Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth. If you are driving, drive to the side of the road so you can stop your car. Make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in. Turn off air - conditioning to stop sand coming in.

Test [12] on Unit [6]

"The weather in Egypt"

Egypt has a nice variety of weather. It is usually very dry. In Egypt, we have hot summers. Our winters are cooler. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights.

October Test

"Your favorite sport"

I like sports. My favorite sport is football. I play football twice a week. I'm good at playing football. I am in the school team. I practice it with my friends. Football is good for my health.

November Test

"Your visit to Elephantine Island"

I visited Elephantine Island last Friday. I traveled with my family. We traveled by boat to the island. It's the most fantastic place in Aswan. It's the oldest part of Aswan. We could do lots of things there. It was a nice day.

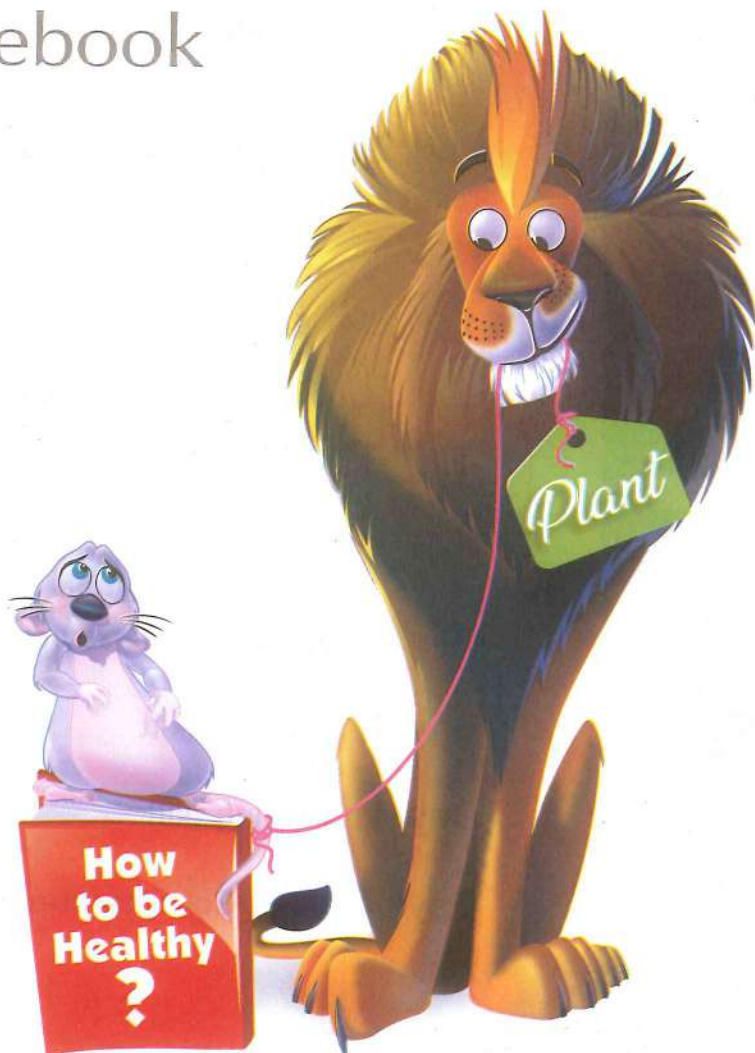
CONNECT

دليل ولي الأمر

Parents' Guide



Interactive Notebook



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com

☎ 15014

5th
Primary

FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

► PART 1

El Moasser Homework Interactive

مراجعة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي [التسميع]

Part 1 Dictation on Lessons 4

Part 2 Accumulative assessments on Dictation 26

► PART 2

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

Day 1 Listening 30

Day 2 Vocabulary & Structure 31

Day 3 Reading skill 45

Day 4 Writing skill 46

Days 5,6&7 Governorates Exams 48



PART 1

El Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي (التسميع)

Part One

Dictation on Lessons

- ١ - إملأ على دروس الوحدة
- ٢ - أهم المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة
- ٣ - تنمية مهارة الكتابة

PART 1
UNIT 1

Dictation on Lessons
 إملأ على دروس الوحدة

اليوم المعلم بأداس مبروح واحد من (A) أو (B) كل طالب ألباس وأقسم استمعوا للمفردات التالية

1 Write & Practice

Model 1

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

مفلفل
 عصي
 لذيذ حامي الدسم
 عصي
 لحم عصي
 عصي

1. Farouza's food is chocolate.
 2. We have a tree.
 3. My uncle grows and potatoes.
 4. We get fresh from chickens.

Lesson 2

ماعز أحمر
 راعي
 كعك (وحدة عصي)
 قطعة لذيذة
 قطعة

1. Can you help me the bags?
 2. I would like some photos.
 3. We eat frozen for dinner.
 4. There are a lot of food in the

Model 2

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

شوكولاتة
 سمج
 ماعز
 سمج
 سمج
 حبيبة

1. is unhealthy if you eat it a lot.
 2. She fresh eggs.
 3. He eggs at the market.
 4. My dad on apple tree.

Lesson 2

حليلة / الحلو
 وصلة اللذان
 حبيبة
 قطعة
 قطعة
 لذيذ

1. Do you want Om Ali for tonight?
 2. is very delicious.
 3. He cuts the potatoes to make
 4. A is someone who buys products.

Part Two

Accumulative assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمي على الإملأ

PART 2

Accumulative assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمي على الإملأ

- المفردات التي تم استيعادها حتى الآن (A) أو (B) كل طالب ألباس وأقسم استمعوا للمفردات التالية
 - اليوم المعلم بأداس مبروح واحد من (A) أو (B) كل طالب ألباس وأقسم استمعوا للمفردات التالية

Unit 1

1. beans
 2. onions
 3. pineapples
 4. shopping list
 5. henry
 6. basketball
 7. castle
 8. ingredients

١ حبشوكا
 ٢ حبش
 ٣ حبش
 ٤ حبش
 ٥ حبش
 ٦ حبش
 ٧ حبش
 ٨ حبش

Units 1 & 2

1. football
 2. tennis
 3. leather suit
 4. nightgown
 5. others
 6. water pollution
 7. sauceman
 8. group

١ أحادي
 ٢ أحادي
 ٣ حبش
 ٤ حبش
 ٥ حبش
 ٦ حبش
 ٧ حبش
 ٨ حبش

Units 2 & 3

1. sweater
 2. sunglasses
 3. spotted
 4. toxic
 5. crown
 6. elves
 7. packets
 8. equipment

١ أحادي
 ٢ أحادي
 ٣ حبش
 ٤ حبش
 ٥ حبش
 ٦ حبش
 ٧ حبش
 ٨ حبش

Unit 1

1. eggs
 2. lemon
 3. fridge
 4. hot medames
 5. grapes
 6. favorite
 7. molokhia
 8. dinner

١ حبش
 ٢ حبش
 ٣ حبش
 ٤ حبش
 ٥ حبش
 ٦ حبش
 ٧ حبش
 ٨ حبش

Unit 2

1. handball
 2. squash
 3. desert
 4. football boots
 5. football pitch
 6. amazing
 7. lines
 8. golden egg

١ حبش
 ٢ حبش
 ٣ حبش
 ٤ حبش
 ٥ حبش
 ٦ حبش
 ٧ حبش
 ٨ حبش

Unit 3

1. striped
 2. coat
 3. sneakers
 4. uniform
 5. sleeve
 6. measure
 7. sugar
 8. pajamas

١ حبش
 ٢ حبش
 ٣ حبش
 ٤ حبش
 ٥ حبش
 ٦ حبش
 ٧ حبش
 ٨ حبش



Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.



I

Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

..... مفضل
 صحي
 ليمون حامض [أخضر]
 بصل
 غير صحي
 بيض

1. Fareeda's food is chocolate.
2. We have a tree.
3. My uncle grows and potatoes.
4. We get fresh from chickens.

Lesson 2

..... يفرغ [حقيبة]
 جزر
 زبادي
 كشرى [وجبة مصرية]
 قائمة تسوق
 ثلاجة

1. Can you help me the bags ?
2. I would like some , please.
3. We eat frozen for dinner.
4. There are a lot of food in the

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

..... شيكولاتة
 تجمع
 مانجو
 بيع
 يزرع
 حديقة

1. is unhealthy if you eat it a lot.
2. She fresh eggs.
3. He eggs at the market.
4. My dad an apple tree.

Lesson 2

..... تحلية / الحلو
 وجبة الغداء
 مهلبية
 بطاطس مقلية
 زبون
 غسل

1. Do you want Om Ali for tonight ?
2. is very delicious.
3. He cuts the potatoes to make
4. A is someone who buys products.

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

.....	فأس
.....	عملاق
.....	قفص
.....	غني
.....	يسقط - يقع
.....	يرمي / يلقي

1. He chopped down the beanstalk with his
2. The is a very big person.
3. The is a box in which we keep animals.
4. He is He has a lot of money.

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	بسبوسة
.....	ملوخية
.....	يسكب / يصب
.....	يخلط
.....	خليط
.....	دقيق سميد

1. My favorite thing to bake is
2. We cook for lunch.
3. Pour the into a baking dish.
4. We use to make basbousa.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

.....	يجذب
.....	قلعة
.....	فقير
.....	يقطع
.....	ذهبي
.....	يقابل

1. A is a very large building built a long time ago.
2. He is He doesn't have any money.
3. They sold the eggs to buy food.
4. Jack an old man in the market.

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	فرن
.....	فول مدمس
.....	يشارك
.....	وصفة طهي
.....	مكونات
.....	يضيف

1. You need to turn your on to get it hot.
2. I food with my sister.
3. I need to buy some wheat for this
4. Put all the in a large pot.

II

Important 20 words

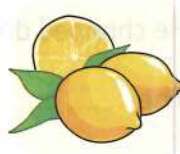


• كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



carrots



1. mahalabia
2. shopping list
3. lemons



4. basbousa

5. onions

6. mango

7. chocolate

8. meat



9. honey

10. pineapples

11. candy

12. limes

13. eggs

14. yogurt

15. ~~carrots~~

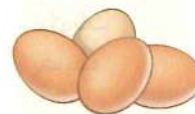
16. coconuts

17. ful medames

18. grapes

19. French fries

20. pizza



III

Writing Practice



- تدريب يساعد التلاميذ على كتابة Paragraph خطوة بخطوة
- قم بحل التدريبات خطوة بخطوة
- حتى تتمكن من إتقان مهارة الكتابة

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Food	Write the meaning : غير صحي مانجو يجمع طازج شيكولاتة	Reorder the words : 1. unhealthy – <u>Chocolate</u> – you eat – is – if – it a lot. 2. have – don't – <u>We</u> – tree – a mango. 3. collects – eggs – fresh – <u>My uncle</u> – every day. 4. is – favorite – <u>My</u> – food – chocolate.	Write a paragraph about : Food
Jack and the beanstalk	..... خاص ساق نبات الفاصوليا يقطع بيضة من الذهب فقير	5. beans – bought – <u>Jack</u> – special – an old man – from. 6. chopped – <u>Jack</u> – the beanstalk – down. 7. sold – <u>Jack</u> – the – eggs – golden. 8. were – <u>Jack</u> – very – his mother – and – poor.	Jack and the beanstalk
My favorite recipe	..... مكونات يخط بسبوسة يسكب شراب سكري	9. mix – <u>You</u> – by – the – hand – ingredients. 10. favorite – <u>My</u> – thing – is – bake – to – basbousa. 11. pour – <u>I</u> – over – the syrup – basbousa – the.	My favorite recipe

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

رياضات
رياضة التنس
رياضة الكاراتيه
نادي
مباريات
يبدو ممتعاً

1. They're talking about
2. He is good at playing
3. He loves watching football on TV.
4. I went to the to practice tennis.

Lesson 2

كرة اليد
ترتيب [حجرة]
عبر الصحراء
يتدرب
فريق
جيد في

1. I'm bad at playing
2. She is bad at her room.
3. He football in a team every day.
4. He is very playing football.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

لعبة الإسكواش
الإبحار
كرة القدم
سيئ
يفوز
السباحة

1. Wael is watching a match.
2. My favorite sport is in the pool.
3. is a very popular sport.
4. I'm at doing kung fu.

Lesson 2

مادة رياضيات
لعبة الصور المتقطعة
قرود
مطبخ
فريق
كتابة

1. I'm bad at doing
2. There are lots of in the zoo.
3. I help my mother in the
4. She is good at poems.

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

..... ملعب كرة القدم
..... نظارة السباحة
..... بدلة
..... مضارب
..... يركل
..... حركات

1. We play football on the football
2. I wear when I go swimming.
3. We wear karate
4. We use squash to play squash.

Lessons 4 & 5

..... رياضي
..... ملوثة
..... مواد كيميائية
..... منافس
..... ولدت
..... يخسر

1. water can kill fish.
2. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian
3. Hedaya was on April 21, 1993.
4. Water pollution can cause animals to their homes.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

..... حذاء كرة القدم
..... فصل الصيف
..... ملعب التنس
..... حمام السباحة
..... معدات
..... حوائط

1. is my favorite season.
2. We play tennis on the
3. A is where I go swimming.
4. There are a lot of sports

Lessons 4 & 5

..... جوائز
..... مسطحات مائية
..... قمامة / مهملات
..... ضار
..... ميدالية
..... تحمل

1. Hedaya Malak won many important
2. Don't throw in a lake.
3. She won the bronze in Tokyo.
4. Hedaya Malak the Egyptian flag at Tokyo Olympic Games.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. kung fu

2. swimming goggles

3. tennis court

4. squash

5. bronze medal

6. tennis

7. karate suit

8. pollution

9. swimming pool

10. handball

11. squash rackets

12. sailing

13. football boots

14. football pitch

15. do karate





- تدريب يساعد التلاميذ على كتابة Paragraph خطوة بخطوة
- قم بحل التدريبات خطوة بخطوة حتى تتمكن من إتقان مهارة الكتابة

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Topics متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب الموضوعات الآتية
A sports athlete	<p>► Write the meaning :</p> <p>..... جوائز</p> <p>..... يفوز</p> <p>..... يتمرن</p> <p>..... جيد في</p> <p>..... مسابقة</p>	<p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. hard - practicing - <u>She</u> - is.</p> <p>2. prizes - won - <u>She</u> - many.</p> <p>3. Malak - taekwondo - a famous - <u>Hedaya</u> - is - player.</p> <p>4. bronze - the - <u>She</u> - won - medal.</p>	<p>► Write a biography about :</p> <p>A sports athlete</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
Sports equipment	<p>..... مضارب</p> <p>..... ملعب كرة القدم</p> <p>..... حذاء كرة القدم</p> <p>..... ملعب تنس</p> <p>..... رياضة التنس</p>	<p>5. rackets - <u>I</u> - squash - in - use.</p> <p>6. play - on - football - <u>I</u> - football pitch - the.</p> <p>7. wear - my - to - <u>I</u> - play football - boots.</p> <p>8. play - on the - <u>We</u> - tennis court - tennis.</p>	<p>► Write a paragraph about :</p> <p>Sports equipment</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
Water pollution	<p>..... المواد الكيميائية</p> <p>..... حوض</p> <p>..... تلوث المياه</p> <p>..... كائنات حية</p> <p>..... مياه الصرف</p>	<p>9. go - water - <u>Chemicals</u> - into - bodies.</p> <p>10. from - sinks - <u>Waste water</u> - causes - pollution.</p> <p>11. pollution - kill - <u>Water</u> - can - organisms.</p>	<p>Water pollution</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

حقيبة سفر
نظارة شمسية
منقط
قلادة / عقد
يرتدى
زى موحد

1. We need to pack our for the holiday.
2. She wore a coat and a scarf.
3. I will take my gold
4. We wear striped at school.

Lesson 2

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

جلابية
ملابس
جيب
قفازات
أميرة
أنماط

1. The is a long white robe.
2. Tell me about Egyptian traditional
3. There are two in the dress.
4. She has white on her hands.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

مخطط
حذاء رياضي
سترة
شورت للسباحة [مايوه]
تي شيرت
بيجامة

1. I bought pajamas.
2. I wear on my feet.
3. I'll go swimming so I need to pack my
4. I put on my at bedtime.

Lesson 2

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

قطن
أكمام
ناج
أميرة
تقليدي
ثوب / رداء

1. The galabeya is made of
2. The galabeya has long
3. She has a on her head.
4. Nada looks like a

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

..... أفزام [كائنات خيالية]
..... مدهش
..... أمين / مخلص
..... جلد
..... زوجة
..... طيب / عطوف

1. The started to make the shoes.
2. This man is He never lies.
3. My bag is made of
4. The made a delicious meal.

Lessons 4 & 5

..... زى موحد
..... بنطلون
..... احتفالات
..... ملون
..... قبعة من الجوخ
..... سترة

1. I like our school
2. The boys wear blue
3. Girls in Mexico wear dresses during
4. They wear bright, clothes.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

..... يقطع
..... جديد
..... متعب
..... صانع أحذية
..... ورشة عمل
..... فقراء

1. She bought clothes.
2. He is He worked very hard yesterday.
3. The was kind and honest.
4. The shoemaker works in his

Lessons 4 & 5

..... جوارب
..... فاتح / شاحب اللون
..... رابطة عنق [كرافته]
..... أنيق
..... نمط
..... منقط

1. We have to wear white
2. The girls don't have to wear
3. Our school uniform is really
4. There are lots of different of sombrero.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. scarf

2. tie

3. sneakers

4. crown

5. sweater

6. striped

7. sunglasses

8. spotted

9. necklace

10. gloves

11. sombrero

12. coat

13. galabeya

14. pajamas

15. T-shirt





- تدريب يساعد التلاميذ على كتابة Paragraph خطوة بخطوة
- قم بحل التدريبات خطوة بخطوة حتى تتمكن من إتقان مهارة الكتابة

Step 1 Vocabulary	اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Emails
Egyptian traditional clothes	<p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>جلابية</p> <p>يرتدى</p> <p>رداء / ثوب</p> <p>كُم</p> <p>قطن</p>	<p>Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. wear - galabeya - <u>Many</u> - the - men.</p> <p>2. is - white - <u>Galabeya</u> - robe - a long.</p> <p>3. sleeves - long - <u>The</u> - are.</p> <p>4. is - cotton - of - <u>Galabeya</u> - made.</p>	<p>Write a paragraph about :</p> <p>Egyptian traditional clothes</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
A trip to Al Fayoum	<p>يحزم أمتعة</p> <p>فلادة / عقد</p> <p>ذهب</p> <p>حقيبة سفر</p> <p>حذاء رياضي</p>	<p>5. pack - T-shirt - <u>I</u> - green - my - will.</p> <p>6. will - necklace - <u>I</u> - my - take - gold.</p> <p>7. need - suitcase - <u>I</u> - my - to pack.</p> <p>8. will - sneakers - <u>I</u> - my - need.</p>	<p>A trip to Al Fayoum</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
School uniform	<p>زى مدرسي</p> <p>أنيق</p> <p>بنطلون</p> <p>فاتح / شاحب اللون</p> <p>يرتدى</p>	<p>9. uniform - smart - <u>Our school</u> - is.</p> <p>10. wear - blue - <u>I</u> - trousers - pale.</p> <p>11. like - school - <u>I</u> - uniform - my.</p>	<p>School uniform</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

شكل
مُزِين / مزخرف
حركة مرور
التمشية
غابات
قرية

1. Elephantine Island took its name from its
2. There is no, so it's very quiet.
3. We can go for a long
4. We were walking in one of Nubian

Lessons 3, 4 & 5

مرشد سياحي
سائح صديق للبيئة
ثقافة
يدمر / يتلف
الحياة البرية
مريح

1. Sherif works as a
2. don't like to travel by plane.
3. Tourists learn about local
4. Eco-tourism helps to protect the

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

غروب الشمس
تقويم
جزيرة
يسافر / يتنقل
أقدم
مقبرة

1. The is fantastic from felucca.
2. We found a rare
3. All the is full of history .
4. The Pyramids in Egypt were used as

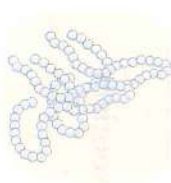
Lessons 3, 4 & 5

يدفع
السياحة البيئية
السياح
تلوث
الوجهة البيئية
يغطس

1. Tourists to stay in people's houses.
2. looks after the environment.
3. Eco-tourism doesn't cause much
4. Tourists love to in the sea.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. throne
2. felucca
3. monuments
4. tourist



5. pearls
6. street
7. island



8. string
9. scream
10. coral reef
11. calendar
12. camp



13. lake
14. strawberry
15. throw



16. screw
17. screen
18. forest
19. waterfall
20. diving

Writing Practice



- تدريب يساعد التلاميذ على كتابة Paragraph خطوة بخطوة
- قم بحل التدريبات خطوة بخطوة حتى تتمكن من إتقان مهارة الكتابة

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraphs
<p>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية</p> <p>► Write the meaning :</p> <p>..... سائح صديق للبيئة</p> <p>..... السياحة البيئية</p> <p>..... مشير / ممتع</p> <p>..... تلوث</p> <p>..... يسبب</p>	<p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية</p> <p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. don't – travel – <u>Eco-tourists</u> – like to – by plane.</p> <p>2. help – people – <u>Eco-tourists</u> – local.</p> <p>3. is – exciting – <u>Eco-tourism</u> – an – idea.</p> <p>4. by plane – pollution – <u>Traveling</u> – causes.</p>	<p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية</p> <p>► Write a paragraph about :</p> <p>Eco-tourism</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>..... السياحة</p> <p>..... ثقافة</p> <p>..... الحياة البرية</p> <p>..... البيئة</p> <p>..... وظائف</p> <p>..... سكان محليين</p>	<p>5. people – cultures – <u>Tourism</u> – helps – learn about.</p> <p>6. helps – wildlife – <u>It</u> – to protect – the.</p> <p>7. helps – environment – <u>Eco-tourism</u> – the.</p> <p>8. gives – for – <u>Tourism</u> – jobs – people – local.</p>	<p>Pros of tourism</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>..... جزيرة الفنتين</p> <p>..... ملء بـ</p> <p>..... أقدم</p> <p>..... جزء</p> <p>..... تاريخ</p>	<p>9. Island – full – <u>Elephantine</u> – is – of – history.</p> <p>10. Island – is – <u>Elephantine</u> – Aswan – in.</p> <p>11. is – of Aswan – part – <u>Elephantine</u> – the oldest – Island.</p>	<p>Elephantine Island</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.



I

Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

.....

حرفي
 كاتب
 بيع
 ناجح
 تجار
 حبوب

1. The made beautiful paintings and sculptures.
2. The knew how to read and write well.
3. Women could baskets at the market.
4. The traveled up and down the Nile to buy things.

Lesson 2

.....

كائنات غير حية
 بركة مياه صخرية
 حشرة
 سلطعون البحر [كابوريا]
 غابة مطيرة
 مياه عذبة

1. are somethings that aren't alive.
2. is a small area of water with rocks and crabs.
3. Fish and are living things.
4. The River Nile is the most important source of

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

.....

ينسج
 يقضى
 فراغة
 سجلات
 اللغة الهيروغليفية
 مدرسة الطب

1. Craftsmen used to clothes.
2. Scribes many years learning hieroglyphs.
3. Women could become
4. Scribes kept and lists for important things.

Lesson 2

.....

نظام بيئي
 على قيد الحياة
 كائنات حية
 مياه مالحة
 نظام بحري
 محيط

1. is the connection between living and non-living things.
2. The in a rockpool are fish and crabs.
3. The ocean is a source of
4. Fish and crabs live in ecosystem.

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

..... الجندب النطاط [جرادة]
..... تستمر في
..... تحصد
..... يطن / يصدر الطنين
..... سور
..... حقول

1. The spends most of his time relaxing.
2. The bees are all the day.
3. He built a strong
4. The and gardens are full of flowers.

Lessons 4 & 5

..... طبيب بيطري
..... وظيفة مكتبية
..... مشكلات
..... تجربة [معملية]
..... يفوز
..... مبرمج كمبيوتر

1. A works with animals.
2. I want a/an in a factory.
3. I enjoy solving
4. We're doing an in science.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

..... مستقبل
..... شيء ممل
..... غريب
..... كسول
..... يستند على
..... محادثة

1. We must think about the
2. He hears a sound.
3. The grasshopper is very
4. There is a between a bee and grasshopper in our book.

Lessons 4 & 5

..... مجروح/مصاب
..... عملية جراحية
..... متحمس [شديد الاهتمام]
..... مادة العلوم
..... حفلة موسيقية
..... هدف

1. If animals are, a vet makes them better.
2. I'm not on being outside.
3. I work in a team for the school
4. The of a football team is to win.

II

Important 15 words



• كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. hieroglyphs

2. fence

3. marine ecosystem



4. dentist

5. scribe

6. pianist

7. rockpool



8. craftsman

9. boring

10. vet

11. trader

12. experiment

13. journalist

14. grasshopper

15. receptionist



III

Writing Practice



- تدريب يساعد التلاميذ على كتابة Paragraph خطوة بخطوة
- قم بحل التدريبات خطوة بخطوة حتى تتمكن من إتقان مهارة الكتابة

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إقناعك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
A vet	Write the meaning : طبيب بيطري يفحص مجروح/مصاب يعمل عملية جراحية	Reorder the words : 1. checks – the – A vet – animals – on. 2. helps – animals – A vet – injured. 3. works – animals – A vet – with. 4. sometimes – an – Animals – need – operation. 5. work – a team – Football – in – players. 6. of – team – is – The aim – a football – to win. 7. in a team – I work – for – concert – the school. 8. can't – by myself – I – a football – win – match. 9. can – a rockpool – An ecosystem – small – be – like. 10. be – the Amazon rainforest – Ecosystem – big – can – like . 11. a -type of – A desert – is – an ecosystem.	Write a paragraph about : A vet
Teamwork	فريق هدف يفوز حفلة مدرسية لعبة كرة القدم	5. work – a team – Football – in – players. 6. of – team – is – The aim – a football – to win. 7. in a team – I work – for – concert – the school. 8. can't – by myself – I – a football – win – match.	Teamwork
Ecosystems	نظام بيئي بركة مياه صخرية غابة مطيرة بحري صحراء	9. can – a rockpool – An ecosystem – small – be – like. 10. be – the Amazon rainforest – Ecosystem – big – can – like . 11. a -type of – A desert – is – an ecosystem.	Ecosystems

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.



I

Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

..... الطقس
 درجة الحرارة
 موجة حارة
 فصل الصيف
 ظل
 رياح قوية / عاصفة

1. We have a nice variety of in Egypt.
2. The sometimes goes to 50 degrees.
3. A is when the temperature goes very high.
4. We stayed in the because it's too sunny.

Lessons 3, 4 & 5

..... وشاح
 الحرارة الشديدة
 برق
 إعصار
 كهربى
 ثور

1. Wear a to protect your face.
2. There might be heavy rain and
3. The was a very big, wide, black cloud.
4. It's not safe to touch the wires.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

..... مناخ
 ممطر
 يجلب
 منعش
 عاصف
 درجة مئوية

1. The desert has a very special
2. People in the desert try to keep
3. It is sometimes in Alexandria.
4. The temperature is about 12

Lessons 3, 4 & 5

..... كمثرى
 انقطاع التيار
 أسلاك
 عاصفة رملية
 كشافات/مصاييح
 غير آمن

1. There might be a power
2. Don't stand near in a storm.
3. Make sure you have candles and
4. Don't go anywhere by train. This could be



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. flood

2. snow

3. bear

4. tidal wave



5. clouds

6. bull

7. pull



8. tornado

9. rainbow

10. sandstorm

11. pea

12. wind

13. bee

14. peach

15. heat wave





- تدريب يساعد التلاميذ على كتابة Paragraph خطوة بخطوة
- قم بحل التدريبات خطوة بخطوة
- حتى تتمكن من إتقان مهارة الكتابة

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraphs
<p>اختر مدى إقناعك للمفردات اللغوية التالية</p> <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>جاف فصل الشتاء متنوع فصل الصيف حار</p>	<p>متبقًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية</p> <p>1. is – deserts – <u>It</u> – in – usually – hot.</p> <p>2. are – in Egypt – <u>Our winters</u> – cooler.</p> <p>3. has – variety – <u>Egypt</u> – a nice – weather – of.</p> <p>4. has – summers – <u>Egypt</u> – hot – very.</p>	<p>متبقًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية</p> <p>Write a paragraph about :</p> <p>The weather in Egypt</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>How to keep safe in a sandstorm</p> <p>يغلق نافذة وشاح يحمى يطفئ / يغلق</p>	<p>5. sure – windows – <u>Make</u> – your – shut – are.</p> <p>6. face – your – and – <u>Cover</u> – head.</p> <p>7. a scarf – your – <u>Wear</u> – to – protect – face.</p> <p>8. off – <u>Turn</u> – air-conditioning.</p>	<p>How to keep safe in a sandstorm</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>How to keep safe in extreme heat</p> <p>يرتدى خفيف شديد الحرارة ظل يمكث</p>	<p>9. light, – clothing – <u>Wear</u> – cool.</p> <p>10. small, – meals – <u>Eat</u> – light.</p> <p>11. in – heat – <u>Stay</u> – in shade – extreme.</p>	<p>How to keep safe in extreme heat</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>



تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطلاب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.
- يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Unit 1

A

1. beans
2. onions
3. pineapples
4. shopping list
5. honey
6. beanstalk
7. castle
8. ingredients

- ١. شيكولاتة
- ٢. جزر
- ٣. جوز هند
- ٤. بطاطس مقلية
- ٥. فقير
- ٦. مزعج
- ٧. فأس
- ٨. فرن

Units 1 & 2

A

1. football
2. tennis
3. karate suit
4. nightmare
5. athlete
6. water pollution
7. saucepan
8. syrup

- ١. إبحار
- ٢. فريق
- ٣. تنس طاولة
- ٤. مضارب الاسكواش
- ٥. حمام سباحة
- ٦. جائزة
- ٧. شوربة عدس
- ٨. ركل الكرة

Units 1, 2 & 3

A

1. sweater
2. sunglasses
3. spotted
4. toxic
5. crown
6. elves
7. pockets
8. equipment

- ١. وشاح
- ٢. شورت للسباحة
- ٣. خطير
- ٤. كشرى
- ٥. حزام
- ٦. دجاج
- ٧. بقرة
- ٨. ميدالية

B

1. eggs
2. lemons
3. fridge
4. ful medames
5. grapes
6. favorite
7. molokhia
8. dinner

- ١. يجمع
- ٢. غير صحي
- ٣. كحك محلي
- ٤. مهلبية
- ٥. عملاق
- ٦. غني
- ٧. وصفة طهي
- ٨. دقيق سميد

B

1. handball
2. squash
3. desert
4. football boots
5. football pitch
6. amazing
7. limes
8. golden egg

- ١. رياضة الكاراتية
- ٢. رياضة السباحة
- ٣. شطرنج
- ٤. رياضة التايكوندو
- ٥. نظارة السباحة
- ٦. ملعب التنس
- ٧. سحري
- ٨. لوز

B

1. striped
2. coat
3. sneakers
4. uniform
5. sleeve
6. mixture
7. sugar
8. pajamas

- ١. حقيبة سفر
- ٢. قلادة / عقد
- ٣. كابوس
- ٤. قفازات
- ٥. قطن
- ٦. صانع أحذية
- ٧. سعر
- ٨. كرة تنس

Units 1,2,3 & 4

A

1. calendar
2. homework
3. eco-tourist
4. throne
5. camp
6. nutrients
7. pajamas
8. cage

- ١. نادر
- ٢. غروب الشمس
- ٣. شعب مرجانية
- ٤. خيط
- ٥. تنزه
- ٦. لذيذ الطعام
- ٧. يخبز
- ٨. أفضل

Units 1,2,3,4 & 5

A

1. female ruler
2. chemicals
3. community
4. living things
5. buzzing
6. cucumbers
7. costume
8. decorated

- ١. كاتب
- ٢. حيوب
- ٣. نظام بيئي
- ٤. سور
- ٥. شيء ممل
- ٦. طبيب بيطري
- ٧. يزرع
- ٨. يفوز

Units 1,2,3,4,5 & 6

A

1. mix
2. bull
3. candle
4. monuments
5. desert
6. robe
7. galabeya
8. clothing

- ١. عاصفة رملية
- ٢. فيضان
- ٣. كشف
- ٤. رائع / مذهش
- ٥. صحراء
- ٦. صانع أحذية
- ٧. زي مدرسي
- ٨. مريح

B

1. felucca
2. Elephantine Island
3. wildlife
4. strawberry
5. eco-friendly
6. boiled eggs
7. special
8. pour

- ١. معبد فيلة
- ٢. السياحة البيئية
- ٣. السكان المحليين
- ٤. منتجع سياحي بيئي
- ٥. سلطانية
- ٦. زبدة
- ٧. يخلط
- ٨. أسوأ

B

1. records
2. pharaoh
3. athlete
4. seaweed
5. shade
6. operation
7. fisherman
8. environment

- ١. سام
- ٢. حرفيين
- ٣. لوحات مرسومة
- ٤. بحري
- ٥. سلطعون البحر
- ٦. الجندب
- ٧. يبيع
- ٨. جلد

B

1. pull
2. snow
3. power cut
4. fresh
5. greenhouse
6. dream
7. popular
8. great

- ١. إعصار
- ٢. موجة حارة
- ٣. عاصفة
- ٤. موجة مد وجزر
- ٥. تاج
- ٦. جيب
- ٧. ورشة
- ٨. رابطة عنق

PART 2

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

اليوم الأول

Listening

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على
افضل درجة في الامتحان.

اليوم الثاني

Vocabulary & Language

طريقة جديدة وعملية جدًا لمراجعة كل
كلمات المنهج.

عرض كل قواعد المنهج
للمراجعة والتدرب عليها.

Day 1 Listening

Listen and tick the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My favorite season is ...
a. summer b. winter c. autumn d. spring
2. The weather is usually ... and warm.
a. snowy b. sunny c. foggy d. rainy
3. I enjoy going to the ... on holidays.
a. beach b. market c. park d. farm
4. When it is windy, there is a lot of ...
a. dust b. ice c. clouds d. rain
5. That's the recipe for making ...
a. mango juice b. lemonade c. baklava d. honey
6. We put honey, water, and lemon juice into a ...
a. searpan b. bottle c. jar d. panicle
7. We ... the mixture for about 10 minutes.
a. eat b. freeze c. cut d. boil
8. We pour the ... over it.
a. soup b. sugar c. salt d. newspaper
9. Ali is a ...
a. vet b. shoemaker c. doctor d. teacher
10. He lives with his ...
a. sister b. father c. wife d. mother
11. Ali has a small ...
a. workshop b. boat c. house d. apartment
12. He uses ... to make shoes.
a. water b. sand c. leather d. cotton

Day 2 Vocabulary & Language

Match the words in the box with the definitions.

Words	Definitions
harvest	to pick
blend	to mix
lemons	citrus fruits
collected	to gather
juice	liquid
ingredients	parts of a mixture
recipe	instructions for cooking
fresh eggs	newly laid
boiled eggs	cooked in water
spices	flavorings
lemonade	refreshing drink
measures	units of measurement
shopping list	list of items to buy

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We ... lemons in our garden.
a. grow b. eat c. mix d. boil
2. My uncle raises chickens. He ... fresh eggs every day.
a. shops b. collects c. grows d. blends
3. "It ... means to pick up something quickly."
a. boil b. grow c. chop d. plant
4. We ... the sugar over the baklava.
a. collect b. taste c. grow d. weigh
5. My mom ... out all the ingredients before mixing them.
a. eats b. boils c. sells d. weighs

Match the words in the box with the definitions.

Words	Definitions
using to	to use
harvest	to pick

Day 3 Grammar

Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1. I don't have ... (any) ...
2. Would you like ... (any) ...?
3. Are there ... (any) ...?
4. I have a ... (any) ...
5. Would you like ... (any) ...?

Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

Words	Definitions
good at	skilled in
great at	very good at
bad at	not good at

I'm very good at playing football, but I'm very bad at swimming.
I'm great at tennis.

Day
3

Reading skill

السؤال الثالث في الورقة التمهيدية

★ Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

happy - bodies - eat - good - unhealthy

It's important to have healthy food. Healthy food helps our grow. Unhealthy food is not for our bodies. I like to eat healthy food, but sometimes I want to chocolate or fries. I know they are , but I think it's OK to have a little.

winters - summers - degrees - weather - trees

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have hot and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 . Our are cooler. The desert has a very special .

السؤال الرابع في الورقة التمهيدية

★ Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- There was a outside the car.

a. wind
b. rain
c. sandstorm
d. lightning
- The underlined word "scared" means .

a. strong
b. afraid
c. angry
d. proud

B. Answer the following questions.

- What would happen if the family moved through the sandstorm?
- Why was it difficult for them to see in the sandstorm?

Day
4

Writing skill

السؤال الخامس في الورقة التمهيدية

★ Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- do - play - How often - you - tennis?
- tomatoes - of - There - lots - are.
- night - made - every - Why - the shoes?
- am - I - Island - Elephantine - on.
- have - mango trees - you - Is - any?
- the floor - was - Big - on.
- match - watching - is - a squash - Saleem.
- does - Cairo - How often - rain - it - in?

السؤال السادس في الورقة التمهيدية

★ Punctuate the following.

- what's your favorite food , Fareeda
- please, help me carry this bag, adam.
- elephantine Island is in aswan.
- do you live in a city, Ali
- yesterday, I was traveling by boat to aswan.
- ancient Egyptians could work as fishermen, bakers and traders

اليوم الثالث

Reading Skill

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجات في الامتحان.

اليوم الرابع

Writing Skill

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة في الامتحان.

Days
5, 6 & 7

20 Governorates Exams

السؤال السابع في الورقة التمهيدية

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Ahmed likes his school .

a. bus
b. uniform
c. teachers
d. doors
- They wear white and blue trousers.

a. hats
b. shirts
c. dresses
d. shoes
- They have to wear a .

a. hat
b. scarf
c. coat
d. tie
- The girls don't wear .

a. ties
b. bags
c. socks
d. trousers

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- She is good at reading, but she is at drawing.

a. cold
b. bad
c. big
d. fat
- A is a very big person.

a. rich
b. nice
c. giant
d. poor
- We can eat for dessert.

a. meat
b. rice
c. chocolate
d. bread
- A helps sick animals.

a. teacher
b. vet
c. doctor
d. scribe

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

favorites - club - football - playing - eating

We are watching a squash match. I love squash and I'm good at tennis, too. My brother is good at . In a team, my mom's are sailing and handball. My brother and I play many sports in the . In Egypt, we have many kinds of sports.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Noha. I live in Aswan. I'm in grade five. I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my family. I have cheese, yogurt and fruit salad. My sister has fried eggs and bread. My parents have full medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables, fruits and rice for lunch. My sister and I help our mother in the kitchen. I study my lessons after lunch. I go to bed at nine o'clock.

اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

- ٢٠ اختبار من اختبارات المحافظات
- اختبارات للأزهر الشريف.
- اختبارات للدمج.



نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

★ Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

A

- My favorite season is
a. summer b. winter c. autumn d. spring
- The weather is usually and warm.
a. snowy b. sunny c. icy d. rainy
- I enjoy going to the on holidays.
a. beach b. market c. park d. farm
- When it is windy, there is a lot of
a. dust b. ice c. clouds d. rain

B

- That's the recipe for making
a. mango juice b. lemonade c. basbousa d. honey
- We put honey, water, and lemon juice into a
a. saucepan b. bottle c. box d. pancake
- We the mixture for about 10 minutes.
a. cool b. freeze c. cut d. boil
- We pour the over it.
a. soup b. syrup c. salt d. saucepan

C

- Ali is a
a. vet b. shoemaker c. doctor d. teacher
- He lives with his
a. sister b. father c. wife d. mother
- Ali has a small
a. workshop b. boat c. house d. apartment
- He uses to make shoes.
a. water b. sand c. leather d. cakes



I

Vocabulary

Unit 1

favorite	مفضل	grow	يزرع / ينمو
limes	ليمون أخضر [حامض]	rich	غني - ثري
lemons	ليمون أصفر	axe	فأس
collect	يجمع	molokhia	ملوخية
sell	يبيع	mix	يخلط
ingredients	مقادير / مكونات	bake	يخبز
recipe	وصفة طهي	boil	يغلي
fried eggs	بيض مقلي	pour	يسكب
boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق	grab	ينتزع - يختطف
beanstalk	ساق نبات الفاصوليا	almond	لوز
saucepan	قدر صغير	syrup	شراب محلي [سكري]
mixture	خليط	weigh out	يزن
shopping list	قائمة تسوق	diamond	ماسة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We mangoes in our garden.
a. bake b. grow c. boil d. mix
- My uncle raises chickens. He fresh eggs every day.
a. chops b. collects c. races d. grows
- "To " means to pick up something quickly.
a. sell b. grab c. chop d. plant
- We the syrup over the basbousa.
a. collect b. bake c. pour d. grow
- My mom out all the ingredients before mixing them.
a. eats b. drinks c. sells d. weighs

Unit 2

kung fu	رياضة الكونغ فو	taekwondo	لعبة التايكوندو
karate	رياضة الكاراتية	famous	مشهور

sailing	الإبحار	sportsperson	شخص رياضي
squash	لعبة الإسكواش	greenhouse	صوبه زجاجية
handball	كرة اليد	championship	بطولة
team	فريق	compete	يتنافس
win	يفوز	court	ملعب تنس
club	نادي	pitch	ملعب كرة القدم
amazing	رائع / مذهش	racket	مضرب
popular	شعبي - محبوب	medal	ميدالية
nightmare	كابوس	swimming goggles	نظارة واقية للسباحة
athlete	لاعب رياضي	competitor	منافس
emissions	انبعاثات	prizes	جوائز



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Hedaya Malak won many important
a. words b. prizes c. courts d. suits
- We use a to play squash.
a. racket b. suit c. boot d. pool
- is my favorite sport because I like doing high kicks.
a. Swimming b. Squash c. Karate d. Tennis
- Football is a very sport in Egypt.
a. bad b. popular c. frightening d. slow
- We play football on the football
a. floor b. pitch c. court d. fence

Unit 3

pack	يُحْمَل - أمتعة	tie	رابطة عنق
suitcase	حقيرة السفر	spotted	منقط
lovely	جميل - محبوب	robe	رداء
sneakers	حذاء رياضي	smart	أنيق
necklace	قلادة	bright	لامع
sweater	سُترة	gold	ذهب
uniform	زي موحد	silver	فضة
Mexican	مكسيكي	protect	يحمي
striped	مخطط	sleeves	أكمام

shoemaker	صانع الأحذية	pockets	جيوب
elves	أقزام [كائنات خيالية]	crown	تاج
leather	جلد	traditional	تقليدي



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I wear a hat to my face.
a. cut b. protect c. see d. go
- We need to our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.
a. chop b. pack c. sell d. cut
- The makes shoes from leather.
a. farmer b. shoemaker c. vet d. fisherman
- My sister is wearing a lovely around her neck.
a. ring b. necklace c. skirt d. sweater
- I need to pack my It can be cool in the evening.
a. shorts b. sweater c. sunglasses d. skirt

Unit 4

town	مدينة صغيرة	coral	مرجان
reign	فترة حكم	eco-lodges	نزل صديقة للبيئة
rare	نادر	city	مدينة كبيرة
sunset	غروب الشمس	coral reefs	شعب مرجانية
island	جزيرة	hiking	التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام
eco-tourists	سياح أصدقاء للبيئة	camp	يعسكر - معسكر
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية	culture	ثقافة
dive	يغوص	valley	وادي
environment	بيئة	comfortable	مريح
hotel	فندق	fantastic	رائع
wildlife	الحياة البرية	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
diving	رياضة الغوص	eco-destination	وجهة بيئية



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Tourists dive in the Red Sea near the reefs.
a. rock b. coral c. stone d. clouds

2. A is bigger than a town.
a. village b. city c. cave d. camp
3. looks after the environment and helps local people.
a. Pollution b. Flood c. Eco-tourism d. Tornado
4. We can enjoy diving and in Taba.
a. hiking b. driving c. planting d. running
5. The Elephantine is in Aswan.
a. Oasis b. Island c. Lake d. River

• Unit 5

scribe	كاتب	buzz	يطن / يصدر طنين
craftsman	حرفي / عامل يدوي	knock	يدق - يقرع الباب
trader	تاجر	operation	عملية جراحية
ecosystem	نظام بيئي	work out	يستنبط / يستنتج
rockpool	بركة مياه صخرية	teammate	زميل في الفريق
living things	كائنات حية	marine	بحري
non-living things	كائنات غير حية	grasshopper	جراد [جندب]
seaweed	عشب بحري	crab	كابوريا / سلطعون البحر
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	carry on	يستمر
connect	يربط / يتواصل	boring	ممل
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	relaxing	مسترخي
freshwater	مياه عذبة	hop away	يقفز بعيداً
fence	سياج / سور		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A is someone who learned how to read and write in Ancient Egypt.
a. craftsman b. fisherman c. scribe d. farmer
2. The is the connection between living things and non-living things.
a. climate b. eco-system c. eco-tourism d. rainforest
3. The is a small area of water with rocks, crabs and seaweed.
a. castle b. rockpool c. cage d. ocean
4. The bees are and the butterflies are flying in the sun.
a. singing b. buzzing c. speaking d. jumping
5. The is making beautiful pots from clay.
a. scribe b. fisherman c. craftsman d. farmer

• Unit 6

cloud	سحابة	extreme weather	طقس قاسي
rainbow	قوس قزح	power cut	انقطاع التيار
snow	جليد	torches	مصابيح يدوية [كشافات]
climate	مناخ	unsafe	غير آمن
degree	درجة مئوية	lightning	البرق
flood	فيضان	lucky	محظوظ
heat wave	موجة حارة	sign	علامة - لافتة
storm	عاصفة	bandage	ضمادة
tidal wave	موجة مد وجذر	message	رسالة
tornado	إعصار	wrist	رسغ اليد
classmate	زميل دراسة	castle	قلعة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- When it rains a lot, there is a
a. sandstorm b. heat wave c. flood d. cloud
- Today, there is a I feel the heat of the sun.
a. storm b. sandstorm c. tidal wave d. heat wave
- Wear a to protect your face in a sandstorm.
a. necklace b. ring c. jacket d. scarf
- After it rains, we can see the in the sky.
a. fire b. storm c. rainbow d. sand
- The flood and the may destroy our homes.
a. cloud b. wind c. tornado d. sun

II

Language

Unit 1



◀ تستخدم [a/an] قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد.

• a - an

- a mango
- an apple

• some - any

◀ تستخدم [any / some] مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة و الأسماء غير المعدودة.

- some juice
- any rice

◀ تستخدم [some] في الإثبات وحالة العرض والطلب.

- ▶ - I have some oranges.
- Would you like some ice cream ?

◀ تستخدم [any] في حالة النفي والاستفهام.

- ▶ - I don't have any water.
- Do you have any sugar ?



Pop Quiz on Language

• Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1. I don't have [some] apples.
2. Would you like [any] oranges ?
3. Are there [some] tomatoes ?
4. I have a [books] in my bag.
5. Would you like [any] juice ?

Unit 2

good at	جيد في	+ inf.	+ ing
great at	ماهر في	+ noun	
bad at	سء في		

- ▶ - I'm very good at playing football, but I'm very bad at swimming.
- I'm great at tennis.



Pop Quiz on Language

• Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My brother is good at [read] stories.
2. Nour is great [on] swimming.
3. My brother is great at [swim] .
4. My uncle [are] good at sailing.
5. Maged is great at [draws] pictures.

Unit 3

1 Infinitive of purpose

تستخدم [to + inf.] عند التعبير عن الغرض وتحديد سبب قيام شخص بفعل شيء ما.

- - I went to the library to borrow a book.
- Injy used a pen to write her essay.

2 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation : التكوين

Subject + الفاعل التصريف الثاني للفعل

◀ عند التحويل لزمن الماضي يضاف (ed) لمعظم الافعال المنتظمة look - looked

◀ والافعال الغير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي go - went

- - She went to the zoo yesterday.

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way :

عندما نستخدم صفات ، نضعهم بهذه الطريقة :

1	2	3	4	
Size مقاس	Age العمر	Color اللون	Material المادة الخام	Noun الاسم
big	old	green	cotton	dress

- - I wear a cotton shirt.



Pop Quiz on Language

• Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1. She went to the cinema and [watch] the new film yesterday.
2. I went to the shop to [buys] a dress.

3. She wore a [cotton , green] dress.
4. I listened to my teacher carefully to [understanding] the lesson.
5. I [buy] a new dress yesterday.

Unit 4

The Past Continuous Tense

1 Statements

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't
 We - You - They / فاعل جمع → were / weren't

{ inf. المصدر + ing }

- ▶ - I **was listening** to music.
- We **weren't making** cakes.

2 Interrogative

Question word + was / were + subject الفاعل + [inf. المصدر + ing] ?
 كلمة الاستفهام

- ▶ - What **were** you **doing** at 5 am yesterday ?
- * I **was swimming**.



Pop Quiz on Language

- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.
- 1. Salma [cook] dinner yesterday evening.
- 2. They [was] swimming in the sea.
- 3. Was he [wear] a suit at the party ?
- 4. She [is playing] games on the internet at 9:00 pm last night.
- 5. Where [is] he traveling yesterday evening ?

1 The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation : التكوين

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + inf. + s / es / ies

- ▶ - We **catch** a bus.
- He **flies** a plane.

2 must / mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

Formation : Subject فاعل + must / mustn't + inf.

◀ تستخدم [must] عندما نتحدث عن شيء من الضروري القيام به.

◀ تستخدم [mustn't] عندما نتحدث عن شيء غير مسموح لنا القيام به.

- ▶ - We **must obey** our parents.
- We **mustn't talk** in the library.



Pop Quiz on Language

• Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1. He [catch] the bus to Giza every day.
2. He doesn't [likes] to play tennis.
3. We [mustn't] tidy up our house.
4. She must [did] her homework.
5. She is ill. She [mustn't] go to the doctor.

Unit 6

1 Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



١. تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

► - I **often** go to the cinema.

٢. ظروف التكرار تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد "verb to be" في الجملة.

► - We **usually** go out on Fridays. [قبل الفعل الأساسي]

- I **am always** in bed at 11 pm. [بعد verb to be]

2 How often ؟ كم مرة...؟

◀ تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل ما في زمن المضارع البسيط :

How often + **do** + اسم جمع / I / you / they / we + [inf.] ؟
does + اسم مفرد / he / she / it + مصدر الفعل ؟

◀ للإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار الآتية :

once	a day	always	sometimes
twice	a week	usually	never
three times	a month	often	
four times	a year		

► How often do you play tennis ? - I **always** play tennis on Sundays.

Pop Quiz on Language

• Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- How [many] do you play football ? - Twice a week.
- She often [go] to work by taxi.
- How [much] does Noha play video games ? - Twice a week.
- She [gets always] a sandwich from this restaurant.
- She is [always] late. She arrives early every day.

The most important 20 correction sentences

الهدف من هذا الجزء : تجميع أهم ٢٠ فكرة مختلفة وردت في سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء في اختبارات المحافظات للأعوام السابقة.

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1. Are there [some] tomatoes ?	any	نستخدم [any] في السؤال
2. Would you like [any] juice ?	some	نستخدم [some] في حالة العرض
3. Salma is good at [play] tennis.	playing	نضيف للفعل ing بعد [good at]
4. Cats [is] good at jumping.	are	نستخدم [are] مع الجمع
5. I went to the library to [reads] a book.	read	نستخدم [to] بعد [المصدر]
6. We [go] to the park last week.	went	الجملة ماضى بسيط لوجود last
7. I [don't] go to the party yesterday.	didn't	نستخدم [didn't] لأن الجملة ماضى بسيط لوجود yesterday
8. What [are] you doing at 8 am yesterday ?	were	نستخدم [were] لان الجملة ماضى مستمر
9. Lara [don't] like pizza.	doesn't	نستخدم [doesn't] مع [المفرد] في المضارع البسيط
10. What must we [doing] to pass the exam ?	do	نستخدم [must] بعد [المصدر]
11. Do you [play usually] on Friday ?	usually play	الظرف يسبق الفعل الأساسى
12. [What] often do you study English ?	How	نستخدم [How] مع [often] للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل
13. She sometimes [go] to the club.	goes	نضيف للفعل [es/s] مع [she] في زمن المضارع البسيط
14. We haven't got [some] burgers.	any	نستخدم [any] في حالة النفي
15. She is bad at [write] stories.	writing	نضيف للفعل ing بعد [bad at]
16. I go to the bedroom [for] sleep.	to	نستخدم [to] للتعبير عن الغرض وبعدها [المصدر]
17. Was he [draw] at 3 pm yesterday ?	drawing	الجملة ماضى مستمر نستخدم فعل مضاف له ing مع Was

18. Omar always [play] football well.	plays	نضيف للفعل [s] مع الفاعل المفرد في زمن المضارع البسيط
19. Hamza is great [on] squash.	at	نستخدم [at] بعد [great] بمعنى رائع في
20. There [are] some water in the bottle.	is	نستخدم [is] لأن كلمة [water] مفرد لا يعد

تدريبات على السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان طبقاً لوحدات المنهج.

Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets

Unit 1

• Countable and uncountable nouns

1. Are there [some] tomatoes ?
2. I have a [books] in my bag.
3. Would you like [any] juice ?
4. Rice [are] my favorite food.
5. I don't have [some] coffee in the kitchen.
6. My mother needs [any] onions.
7. There [is] some chairs in the room.
8. Can I have [any] water, please ?

Unit 2

• Talking about things we do or don't do well

1. Huda is good at [plays] tennis.
2. I'm bad at tennis, but I'm good [in] football.
3. My brother is great at [swim] .
4. My uncle [are] good at sailing.
5. Maged is great at [draws] pictures.
6. Ahmed is bad at [kick] the ball.
7. Cats [is] good at jumping.
8. They're good [on] handball.

Unit 3

- Past Simple Tense
- Infinitive of purpose
- Adjectives order

1. We need to [packing] our suitcases for the holiday.
2. We [go] to the Pyramids last week.
3. I went to the club to [doing] sports.
4. She bought a scarf to [kept] her warm.
5. She wore a [cotton , green] dress.
6. I listened to my teacher carefully to [understanding] the lesson.
7. I [buy] a new dress yesterday.
8. She used the internet to [doing] a project.
9. We [don't] wear costumes for the party last week.
10. He is wearing an [orange, old] hat today.

Unit 4

- The past continuous tense

1. What [are] you doing at 5 am yesterday ?
2. I was [do] my homework at 10:00 last night.
3. Was he [wear] a suit at the party ?
4. She [is playing] games on the internet at 9:00 pm last night.
5. Where [is] he traveling yesterday evening ?
6. Were you making a cake ? - Yes, I [were].
7. He [isn't] eating ice cream at 3 pm yesterday.

Unit 5

- The present simple tense
- "must / mustn't"

1. Seif [visit] his grandpa every week.
2. Manal [don't] like pizza.

3. Esraa and Nada don't [went] to school by bus.
4. We [mustn't] tidy up our house.
5. She must [went] her homework.
6. She is ill. She [mustn't] go to the doctor.
7. What must we [doing] to pass our exams ?
8. They don't [traveling] by train. They don't love it.
9. He always [wash] his hands before eating.
10. I usually [going] to the park with my friends.

Unit 6

• Adverbs of frequency

1. Do you [play usually] tennis on weekends ?
2. She usually [have] a shower in the morning.
3. How [much] does Noha play video games ? - Twice a week.
4. She [gets always] a sandwich from this restaurant.
5. She is [always] late. She arrives early every day.
6. [What] often do you play football ? - once a week.
7. They [never are] late for school.
8. How often [do] she visit her grandpa ?
9. She sometimes [go] to the club.



السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية

★ Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A

happy – bodies – eat – good – unhealthy

It's important to have healthy food. Healthy food helps our [1] grow. Unhealthy food is not [2] for our bodies. I like to eat healthy food, but sometimes I want to [3] chocolate or fries. I know they are [4] , but I think it's OK to have a little.

B

winters – summers – degrees – weather – trees

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have hot [1] and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 [2] Our [3] are cooler. The desert has a very special [4]

السؤال الرابع في الورقة الامتحانية

★ Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us ? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There was a outside the car.
a. wind b. rain c. sandstorm d. lightning
- The underlined word "scared" means
a. strong b. afraid c. angry d. proud

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What would happen if the family moved through the sandstorm ?

.....

4. Why was it difficult for them to see in the sandstorm ?

.....



السؤال الخامس في الورقة الامتحانية

★ Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. do – play – How often – you – tennis ?
.....
2. tomatoes – of – There – lots – are.
.....
3. night – made – every – Who – the shoes ?
.....
4. am – I – Island – Elephantine – on.
.....
5. have – mango trees – you – Do – any ?
.....
6. the floor – was – She – on.
.....
7. match – watching – is – a squash – Seleem.
.....
8. does – Cairo – How often – rain – it – in ?
.....

السؤال السابع في الورقة الامتحانية

★ Punctuate the following.

1. what's your favorite food , Fareeda
.....
2. please, help me carry this bag, adam.
.....
3. elephantine Island is in aswan.
.....
4. do you live in a city, Ali
.....
5. yesterday, I was traveling by boat to aswan.
.....
6. ancient Egyptians could work as fishermen, bakers and traders
.....



Important paragraphs

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية (للمزيد من التدريب في نهاية كتاب الشرح)

"Sports equipment"

John and Sara have sports equipment. John wears his football boots to play football. Sara wears her swimming goggles to go swimming. They use their squash rackets to play squash. They play tennis on the courts. John wears his karate suit to do karate.

"Traditional Clothes"

My father bought a galabeya to wear for Eid. It is made from cotton. It has pockets. The pockets are hidden. It has long sleeves to protect your hands. There are many colors. My dad's favorite is white.

"Our school uniform"

Our school uniform is smart. We wear a white shirt and blue trousers. We have to wear a blue tie. In winter, we wear dark blue sweaters. In summer, we can wear blue shorts.

"Teamwork"

Teamwork is very important. I work in a team in science class when we're doing an experiment. I work in a team when I'm playing football. You can't win a football match by yourself! You work with your teammates to do this.

Women in Ancient Egypt.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home. They could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market. Hatshepsut was a famous queen in Ancient Egypt.

The weather in Egypt

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot summers. The temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees in summers. Our winters are cooler. It doesn't often rain in Cairo.

"A biography about Hedaya Malak"

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag in 2021. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of 7 and won many prizes at the age of 14. She is a very kind person.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Ahmed likes his school
a. bus b. uniform c. teachers d. doors
- They wear white and blue trousers.
a. hats b. shirts c. dresses d. shoes
- They have to wear a
a. hat b. scarf c. coat d. tie
- The girls don't wear
a. ties b. bags c. socks d. trousers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- She is good at reading, but she is at drawing,
a. cold b. bad c. big d. fat
- A is a very big person.
a. rich b. nice c. giant d. poor
- We can eat for dessert.
a. meat b. rice c. chocolate d. bread
- A helps sick animals.
a. teacher b. vet c. doctor d. scribe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

favorites - club - football - playing - eating

We are watching a squash match. I love squash and I'm good at
[1] tennis, too. My brother is good at playing [2] in a team.
My mom's [3] are sailing and handball. My brother and I play
many sports in the [4] In Egypt, we have many kinds of sports.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Noha. I live in Aswan. I'm in grade five. I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my family. I have cheese, yogurt and fruit salad. My sister has fried eggs and bread. My parents have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables, fruits and rice for lunch. My sister and I help our mother in the kitchen. I study my lessons after lunch. I go to bed at nine o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about life.

- a. Noha's b. Ahmed's c. school d. sports

2. The underlined phrase "get up" means

- a. wake up b. play c. go up d. sleep

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Noha get up?

4. Where does Noha go in the afternoon?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. makes - The - shoes - his workshop - in - shoemaker.

2. market - onions - sells - She - the - at.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. We mustn't [talking] in the library.

2. She didn't [cleaned] the room yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following.

i live in Cairo

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

A fantastic place in Egypt

Guiding elements :

• beautiful place

• had lunch

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My uncle has a
a. car b. ship c. farm d. bike
- Every, we go to visit him.
a. month b. year c. day d. week
- We drink milk.
a. unhealthy b. bad c. sad d. fresh
- He lives in a big
a. flat b. house c. cave d. room

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A is a very big person.
a. cage b. box c. giant d. castle
- We are eating fruit from the trees and sitting in their
a. shade b. cloud c. cloth d. material
- In my school, boys and girls wear
a. robes b. sleeves c. galabeyas d. uniforms
- Too many from cars can cause pollution.
a. greenhouses b. emissions c. nightmares d. dreams

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

go -decorated - family- Island - Nubian

I'm Gamila. Last summer, I went to Aswan with my [1] We saw one of the [2] villages. The houses were [3] with different colors. We saw the Elephantine [4] , it was a fantastic place.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, our school made a fun day. Every student wore funny clothes. Boys wore like animals; girls wore like clowns. We ate cakes, sandwiches and drank orange juice. The boys played with the balloons. The girls sang some songs. Our teachers gave us sweets and said funny jokes. We spent a nice time. At 4 o'clock we finished our fun day. We all like our school very much.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is about "A day".
a. bad b. terrible c. fun d. sad

2. The girls sang some
a. stories b. songs c. books d. notes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4. When did you finish your fun day ?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. I - eat - to - eggs - cheese -like- and.

2. there - Are - in the - oranges - any - basket ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets:

1. We don't [has] a mango tree in our garden.

2. What were you [do] at 7 o'clock ?

7 Punctuate the following.

how do you go to school

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

What did you do yesterday?

Guiding elements :

• eat breakfast

• went to

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo
a. doctor b. teacher c. player d. singer
- Hedaya carried the Egyptian in 2021.
a. cup b. flag c. bag d. gold medal
- Hedaya began practicing taekwondo at the age of
a. seven b. fourteen c. four d. seventy
- Hedaya is a very person.
a. sad b. bad c. mad d. kind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We wear to play football.
a. suits b. goggles c. sneakers d. rackets
- Marwa went to the to borrow books.
a. wedding b. market c. shop d. library
- Khalid wears to protect his eyes.
a. sunglasses b. boots c. belts d. shorts
- A helps sick people.
a. teacher b. doctor c. scribe d. trader

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

market - lunch - unhealthy - rice - healthy

My favorite food is fish. Fish is [1] Mother buys fish from the [2] She cooks it for [3] We eat fish with [4] and salad.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last weekend, we visited our uncle in Luxor. We went to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. We went to the mosque and said 'Eid Mubarak' to our friends. Aunt made delicious cakes with nuts. We ate cakes and drank mango juice. We played with our friends and we bought some presents. It was a nice weekend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is about "celebrating".
a. Ramadan b. Sham el-Nessim c. Eid Al-Fitr d. the New Year

2. It was a weekend.

a. bad

b. sad

c. nice

d. mad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did they go to Luxor ?

4. What did they buy ?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. were - They - looking - photos - at.

2. Mom - fish - cooked - Friday - last.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I [play] football yesterday.

2. Eman is good at [read].

7 Punctuate the following.

what is your name

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite sport

Guiding elements :

• club

• friends

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Tourism is very to many countries.
a. bad b. important c. toxic d. poor
- Local people can get from tourism.
a. culture b. wildlife c. jobs d. food
- Tourism helps people learn about new
a. crops b. houses c. ingredients d. cultures
- Egypt eco-tourism in many places.
a. takes b. encourages c. works d. goes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My mother the vegetables with the knife to make salad.
a. ships b. grabs c. chops d. buys
- water can make children and old people ill.
a. Dirty b. Clean c. Healthy d. Nice
- Randa is a She looks after sick animals.
a. computer programmer b. vet
c. mechanic d. dentist
- Can you help me my suitcases for our holiday tomorrow?
a. wait b. pack c. sink d. back

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

healthy - little - chicken - unhealthy - grow

I'm Gana. I love chocolate, but it's [1] and we should eat it a [2] My mother advises me to eat [3] food, so I like to eat [4] and fish. I also love mangoes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

It is summer. Nader and his family are preparing themselves for a nice trip to Al-Fayoum. They are also happy to visit Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak who live there and have a big house with a lovely pool. Nader and his family are packing their suitcases for the holiday. Nader needs to pack his swimming shorts and his sweater as it can be cool in the evenings. Mom tells him that they will be walking around a lot so he will need something comfortable on his feet like sneakers. Nader also will take his sunglasses as

it may be sunny. Mother will take her necklace and my sister will take her striped dress.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nader will wear his sunglasses when it is
a. cloudy b. foggy c. sunny d. cold
2. Nader needs his shorts to swim in the
a. sea b. pool c. sink d. desert

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do you think Nader will need his sneakers?
.....

4. Who are they going to visit in Al-Fayoum ?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. were - the - radio - listening - We - to.
.....

2. University - My - studies - Mansoura - sister - at.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Would you like [any] tea?
2. They [sleep] at six yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following.

What sports do we have in egypt
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

A trip to Al Fayoum

Guiding elements :

- pack our suitcases
- swimming shorts

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Eco-tourism is a/an idea.
a. bad b. ugly c. exciting d. weak
- Sherif is a in Hurghada.
a. trader b. tour guide c. doctor d. vet
- He tells the tourists where they can
a. play b. walk c. run d. dive
- Normal tourism the natural environment.
a. looks after b. protects c. damages d. saves

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The is a box in which we keep animals.
a. ecosystem b. cage c. desert d. river
- We stayed in the to avoid the hot sunshine.
a. summer b. heat wave c. storm d. shade
- I can't climb the garden because it is high.
a. chair b. fence c. desk d. chair
- Water is a very dangerous problem.
a. population b. sport c. wheel d. pollution

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

robe - hidden - short - long - galabeya

The Egyptian people wear many traditional clothes. Many men wear the [1]..... This is a long white [2]..... that is very popular. It looks really cool to wear. It's made from cotton and is usually white. The sleeves are [3]..... so we don't get sunburned. It has pockets but they are [4].....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas. We call this water pollution. It can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It also can kill the birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. We should save as much water as possible. We shouldn't throw garbage in seas or near a lake or beaches.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "..... pollution".
a. Land d. Water c. Noise d. Air
2. The underlined word "garbage" means ".....".
a. cities b. boxes c. paper d. trash

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What are the water bodies?

.....

4. What can polluted water kill?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. tomatoes - about - some - How - buying ?

.....

2. a gold - She - wants - medal - win - to.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. We [grow always] mangoes in our garden.

2. I have a [leather, black] bag.

7 Punctuate the following.

Where can samy play tennis

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

The weather in Egypt

Guiding elements :

• nice variety of weather

• cool winters

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Elephantine Island is the part of Aswan.
a. oldest b. biggest c. smallest d. youngest
- All the island is full of
a. people b. history c. cars d. lights
- We to the Aswan Museum.
a. played b. ate c. went d. visited
- We found a very rare from the reign of Thutmose III.
a. book b. paper c. calendar d. visit

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The tennis is where we play tennis.
a. pool b. balcony c. court d. kitchen
- My is a blue shirt and a brown skirt.
a. uniform b. bag c. book d. statue
- Eco-tourism helps to the wildlife.
a. protect b. build c. buy d. ask
- A is a very large building built a long time ago.
a. castle b. cage c. room d. house

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

beans - selling - market - last - eating

There was a boy called Jack. Jack went to the [1] to sell his cow. On the way, he met an old man who was [2] beans. He wasn't interested in buying the [3] But he bought the beans at [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

People have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. They eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal. They should have healthy food for healthy life. Doctors say that healthy food is important, and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to keep healthy. They also advise people to drink a lot of fresh water, and practice a sport every day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People have meals every day.
a. no b. one c. three d. five
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a. people b. meals c. animals d. birds

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What should people eat?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. there - in - milk - Is - fridge-the - any ?

.....

2. bad - I'm - doing - very - jigsaws-at.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. He [watch] TV yesterday.

2. He doesn't have [some] bags.

7 Punctuate the following.

what's the weather like today

.....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

A job you would like to do in the future

Guiding elements :

- a vet
- the pros and cons

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Faten is in grade
a. two b. four c. five d. six
- Faten doesn't like
a. meat b. chicken c. fish d. eggs
- Faten likes drawing pictures of
a. animals b. flowers c. houses d. rivers
- She often plays in the club .
a. tennis b. squash c. handball d. basketball

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My uncle planted an apple tree in his
a. office b. library c. room d. garden
- I'm good at reading, but I'm at drawing.
a. great b. bad c. good d. nice
- The makes us bags and shoes .
a. doctor b. engineer c. farmer d. shoemaker
- Ahmed can carry the heavy box. He is
a. strong b. weak c. strange d. string

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

farms - injured - healthy - clean - needs

A vet is an important job. A vet works with animals .If an animal is sick or [1], a vet helps to make it better. If an animal [2] an operation , the room has to be very [3] A vet goes to people's houses or [4] to check on animals. A vet loves the countryside.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are a lot of **wonderful** places in Egypt. Aswan is one of these places. Aswan is a beautiful and calm place .There isn't much traffic, so it's quiet and the air is clean. There are no forests but there are lots of trees so it's quite green. Last summer , I visited Aswan with my family .We went to Elephantine Island by boat. It's a fantastic place . Elephantine Island is full of history.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "wonderful" means ".....".
a. dark b. ugly c. amazing d. bad
2. There are lots of in Aswan so it's green .
a. forests b. trees c. cars d. buses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How did they go to Elephantine Island ?
.....

4. When did the writer and his family visit Aswan ?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - a - Younis - guide - tour - Hurghada - in.
.....

2. would - What - like - you - lunch - for ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I [don't] see my sister last night.

2. There aren't [some] mangoes in the fridge.

7 Punctuate the following.

we don't go to school on Fridays
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

A sport you like

Guiding elements :

- What do you wear to do it ?
- Where do you practice it ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Nora gets up at in the morning .
a. 6:00 b. 6:30 c. 7:30 d. 8:00
- Nora takes a short in the morning.
a. nap b. sleep c. snack d. shower
- She eats at 8:00 in the morning .
a. dinner b. lunch c. breakfast d. snack
- Nora helps her mom in the
a. breakfast b. lunch c. kitchen d. bedroom

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Something that is not alive is
a. lazy b. living c. non-living d. active
- When it's very hot and no one can do anything , it's called
a. flood b. heat wave c. tidal wave d. tornado
- We can buy and sell things at the
a. library b. school c. market d. hospital
- I wear to protect my eyes from the sun.
a. sunglasses b. scarf c. sandals d. T-shirt

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

bad - flag - in - amazing - famous

There are many famous people in Egypt. Hedaya Malak is a [1] Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian [2] at the Tokyo Olympic Games [3] 2021. This is [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water , such as fish, birds and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. There are many causes of water pollution . For example, waste water from sinks and toilets, chemicals from factories ,waste water from agricultural land. We must protect our rivers and lakes from pollution. We must stop throwing garbage and save as much water as possible.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ".....".

a. Plants

b. Pollution

c. Shapes

d. Food

2. We should stop throwing in rivers and canals.

a. garbage

b. water

c. fish

d. flowers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does pollution kill ?

.....

4. What should we do to keep the water clean ?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. have - tree - the garden - We - a mango - in.

.....

2. a gold - She - win - medal - wants - to.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. How often [did] you walk to school ?

2. Would you like [any] carrots ?

7 Punctuate the following.

i would like an orange

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

Healthy food

Guiding elements :

• Why is healthy food important ?

• What healthy food can we eat ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My favorite sport is
a. basketball b. tennis c. football d. karate
- I play it on
a. Fridays b. Mondays c. Sundays d. Tuesdays
- I play it with my
a. friends b. sister c. brother d. father
- Football is a/an sport.
a. boring b. easy c. hard d. exciting

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We sleep in the
a. bathroom b. kitchen c. bedroom d. balcony
- A/An means all the animals, plants, rocks in a place.
a. river b. ecosystem c. living d. bird
- I use my when I go swimming.
a. goggles b. boots c. sneakers d. shoes
- Ancient Egyptians used to write everything down.
a. English b. Arabic c. French d. hieroglyphs

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

comfortable - protect - local - environment - thin

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It helps to [1] wildlife. It looks after the [2] It helps the [3] people. But eco-tourism isn't as [4] as normal tourism.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Youssef, Noha and Ali are friends. They are of the same age. They will visit Alexandria next Friday. They are very excited to go there. They need to pack their suitcases for the holiday. Youssef will need his sneakers because they will walk around a lot and he needs to wear something comfortable on his feet. Noha will pack her sunglasses because it will be very sunny there. Ali will pack his swimming shorts because he wants to go swimming there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It will be sunny in Alexandria so Noha will pack her
a. dress b. sunglasses c. pajamas d. necklace
2. The underlined word "excited" means " ".
a. happy b. sad c. angry d. thirsty

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do you think the friends will do in Alexandria?

.....

4. Why does Youssef want to pack his sneakers?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - Would - like - an - orange?

.....

2. bed - should - go - early - You - to.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I [play] basketball yesterday.

2. We don't have [some] fruits.

7 Punctuate the following.

he doesn't feel well

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

Your visit to Alexandria

Guiding elements :

- What did you do there?
- What is Alexandria famous for?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Our school uniform is
a. ugly b. bad c. smart d. dirty
- The boys wear green shorts.
a. light b. dark c. long d. tall
- The boys have got a dark red when it gets cold.
a. jeans b. sweater c. shorts d. hat
- We play football with our at school.
a. teachers b. friends c. family d. fathers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- all the ingredients into a big bowl by hand.
a. Tidy b. Write c. Mix d. Boil
- Galabeyas have, but they are hidden.
a. pockets b. crowns c. leather d. gloves
- I use my to play squash.
a. goggles b. rackets c. sunglasses d. galabeya
- The are buzzing all the day.
a. bees b. grasshoppers c. foxes d. ants

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shoes - poor - leather - bed - food

Once upon a time, a shoemaker lived in a town with his wife. They were very [1] One night, he was in his workshop. He has only got enough [2] for one more pair of shoes. He said "I'll cut the leather now and make the [3] in the morning. He cut out the leather and went to [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I can't breathe because the air is black and toxic. Inside the house we use air fresheners to try to make the air smell better. We can't go outside. There are too many cars and too much traffic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to hospital because of problems with his breathing.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We use to try to make the air smell better.
a. emissions b. traffic
c. lungs d. air fresheners
2. The air is black and
a. toxic b. problem c. good d. better

B. Answer the following questions.

- ### 3. Why can't we go outside?

4. Why did your little brother have to go to hospital?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. yesterday - What - buy - you - did?

2. the - **Jack** - climbed - beanstalk.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Yesterday, I [play] football.
2. You [must] walk on the grass.

7 Punctuate the following.

- is mona good at making cakes?

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

My favorite sport

Guiding elements :

- Which sport do you like?
- Where do you play it?

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We went to the Elephantine
a. Park b. School c. Island d. Market
- We went there on
a. Friday b. Sunday c. Tuesday d. Monday
- We traveled by to the island.
a. car b. boat c. taxi d. plane
- It is the part of Aswan.
a. newest b. widest c. longest d. oldest

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We can keep animals and birds in a
a. bowl b. school c. cupboard d. cage
- Water pollution can organisms.
a. save b. keep c. protect d. kill
- Ali is kind and All people love him.
a. stupid b. ugly c. lazy d. honest
- Eco-tourism helps us protect the
a. pollution b. wildlife c. journey d. gases

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

monuments - cultures - jobs - dioxide - crops

Tourism is very important to a lot of countries. Tourism gives [1] to local people. It helps tourists learn about new [2] But tourism creates too much carbon [3] from plane journeys. Also tourism damages the historical places or [4] Tourists should try eco-tourism because it looks after wildlife.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Everyone in ancient Egypt had a job. They could be fishermen, bakers, or doctors. But most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields near their homes. They **grew** crops like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen were good. They made beautiful paintings, beautiful gold jewelry, and sculptures. They used to weave clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and they could work outside, too. They cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of children.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about in ancient Egypt.
a. clothes b. pots c. jobs d. food
2. The word "**grew**" is the same meaning of the word
a. raised b. planted c. drank d. ate

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did ancient Egyptian craftsmen do?

.....

4. Where could women in Ancient Egypt work?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sports - in Egypt - **What** - have - do - we ?

.....

2. makes - shoemaker - **The** - in his - shoes - workshop.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Would you like [any] eggs?

2. I was [listen] to the radio.

7 Punctuate the following.

what's Hamza's favorite food

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

A famous sports person

Guiding elements :

• What does he/she play?

• Did he/she win any prizes?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My name's Rana. I work with
a. animals b. cars c. clothes d. tourists
2. If they are , I help to make them better.
a. happy b. sick c. good d. excited
3. The operation room has to be
a. dirty b. small c. messy d. clean
4. I go to people's to check on the animals.
a. schools b. farms c. hotels d. office

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We use a to play squash.
a. racket b. boot c. necklace d. pool
2. Giant means very
a. poor b. rich c. big d. small
3. My uncle raises chickens. He fresh eggs every day.
a. chops b. collects c. grows d. plays
4. The could destroy our homes.
a. cloud b. tornado c. sun d. moon

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

local - hotels - environment - big - plane

Eco-tourism is unusual and exciting. It's tourism that looks after the
 (1) and helps (2) people. Eco-tourists can enjoy
 diving and hiking. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by (3) because
 of the pollution that planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.
 They stay in small, local (4) or pay to stay in people's houses.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello, I'm Eman. I'm in grade five. Basketball is my favorite sport. I play
 it with my friends. We play it in a team. We play it in the club near my house.
 We go to the club twice a week for training. I love my teammates. When I
 work in a team of five players, I learn how to co-operate with others. We
 achieve a successful thing together. You can win at a basketball match by
 scoring the most points.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a. football b. basketball c. swimming d. running
2. Eman plays basketball with her.....
a. brothers b. sisters c. friends d. family

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What's Eman's favorite sport?

.....

4. How many players are there in a basketball team?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the - Cut - basbousa - eat - and - it.

.....

2. need - We - pack - to - suitcases - our.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. How about [buy] some oranges?

2. Ahmed usually [get] up early.

7 Punctuate the following.

the weather is hot and sunny

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

School uniform

Guiding elements :

- trousers
- checked skirt

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Jana will go to the with her mom.
a. market b. zoo c. school d. hospital
- They need to buy
a. fruits and vegetables b. tea and sugar
c. salt d. bread and rice
- There aren't any in the fridge.
a. lemons b. eggs c. onions d. potatoes
- Jana would like for lunch on Monday.
a. butter b. koshari c. chicken d. meat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- You need to turn on the to get it hot.
a. television b. light c. oven d. radio
- I wear my swimming to go swimming.
a. boots b. sandals c. goggles d. rackets
- The makes shoes from leather.
a. farmer b. shoemaker c. fisherman d. doctor
- Tourists pay for rooms in
a. parks b. hospitals c. offices d. hotels

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

crops - craftsmen - pots - gold - clothes

Ancient Egyptian [1] were very good. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful [2] jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful [3] and make colorful cooking [4] They were amazing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a. desert b. sandstorm c. road d. car
2. They were going by
a. taxi b. plane c. train d. car

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did he see when he looked out of the window ?
.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. would - like - What - eat - to - you?
.....

2. brother - very - My - is - at - good - pictures - drawing.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. She is good at [play] tennis.
2. I don't have [some] apples.

7 Punctuate the following.

i'm playing football in a team
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite food

Guiding elements :

- delicious • lunch
-
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Soha is good at making
a. cakes b. rice c. meat d. fattah
- Soha is at playing handball.
a. bad b. good c. sad d. mad
- Omar is Soha's
a. cousin b. brother c. uncle d. son
- Omar is years old.
a. 24 b. 34 c. 14 d. 4

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- You should stay in the when there is a heat wave.
a. sun b. street c. shade d. beach
- I wear black on my hand in winter.
a. shoes b. pants c. sunglasses d. gloves
- We mustn't talk in the
a. library b. street c. stadium d. playground
- The is a box in which we keep animals.
a. citadel b. cage c. castle d. cave

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

care - baskets - Ancient - important - men

Women in Ancient Egypt worked at home. They cooked, cleaned, and took [1] of children. They could also weave [2] , make sandals, and even become pharaohs. In [3] Egypt, everyone knew that work was [4] for their success.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Mona is an active girl. She is in grade 5. She always gets up early at 6:30 in the morning. She often takes a short shower, then she reads a book. She helps her mom make breakfast at 8:00 am in the kitchen. They usually eat breakfast at 8:30. She helps her mom clean the house. She goes to the park with her friends in the evening. She sometimes visits her grandparents on Friday. She never plays video games. She can't play them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mona is a /an girl.

a. lazy

b. bad

c. active

d. naughty

2. Mona is in grade

a. five

b. three

c. four

d. six

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How often does Mona play video games ?

.....

4. What is Mona's routine in the morning ?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. usually - do - What - wear - they ?

.....

2. grows - My - father - potatoes - onions - and.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I [go] to the cinema last week.

2. There aren't [some] mangoes in the fridge.

7 Punctuate the following.

what was ahmed doing?

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

My favorite sport

Guiding elements :

• What is this sport?

• Why do you like it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- thinks chocolate is unhealthy.
a. Fareeda b. Dina c. Rania d. No one
- like mango.
a. Dina b. Fareeda
c. Dina and Fareeda d. No one
- Fareeda has a/an tree.
a. mango b. lemon c. orange d. guava
- Dina has a tree.
a. mango b. lemon
c. mango and lemon d. banana

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- There was a yesterday. I couldn't get out of my house.
a. storm b. sun c. cloud d. rainbow
- I put all my clothes in the
a. sneakers b. suitcase c. necklace d. pool
- We will take a to cut vegetables.
a. spoon b. fork c. knife d. teeth
- I use to play squash.
a. a stick b. weapons c. guns d. rackets

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sad - playing - pitch - boots - strong

I like playing sports . It makes me [1] I usually go to the football [2] I am good at [3] football. I wear my football [4] to help me run fast.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. They cooked meals, cleaned the house and took care of their children. They could weave baskets and bake bread. They could even become pharaohs . One of the most famous queens in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ancient Egyptian women took care of their
a. children b. goats c. cows d. no answer
2. Ancient Egyptian women worked
a. inside b. outside
c. inside and outside d. there

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who was Hatshepsut ?
.....
4. What could the Ancient Egyptian women weave ?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. do - wear - usually - you - What ?
.....
2. up - 7 am - wake - before - We.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Are there [some] apples ?
2. We [mustn't] tidy up our house.

7 Punctuate the following.

i never go to school on fridays.
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite food

Guiding elements :

- favorite • like

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Amir is in primary
a. two b. five c. three d. four
- Amir's father is a/an
a. teacher b. fisherman c. engineer d. farmer
- Amir's mother is a/ an
a. nurse b. housewife c. teacher d. engineer
- Amir has brothers and a sister.
a. two b. five c. three d. four

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We play tennis in the
a. pool b. pitch c. court d. class
- My uncle has a farm. He onions and potatoes.
a. makes b. grows c. cooks d. drinks
- Eco-tourism is very
a. boring b. bad c. exciting d. ugly
- You need your because it's very sunny.
a. sunglasses b. scarf c. jacket d. sweater

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

water - cola - fruit - numbers - burgers

Mai and Lama are two sisters. They are different. Mai likes to eat [1] and vegetables. She plays sports. She drinks a lot of [2] She never visits a doctor. Lama likes to eat [3] and chocolate. She plays video games. She drinks [4] She always goes to the doctor. Mai is healthier than Lama.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Kamal and Sami are two **pupils** in primary five. They are always helpful. They look after their school. Inside their classroom, they put the litter in the bin. When the garbage collector comes, he finds the litter in the bin. Kamal and Sami always say, "We must respect the garbage collector". When the teachers come into their classroom, they find the board clean. They thank Kamal and Sami for their good work. Kamal and Sami say, "Our teachers are our fathers and mothers, we are thankful to them".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Kamal and Sami are always
a. helpful b. naughty c. late d. early
2. "Kamal and Sami are two **pupils** in primary five", the word "**pupils**" means " ".
a. teachers b. students c. engineers d. doctors

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do Kamal and Sami do with litter inside their classroom?
.....
4. Why do the teachers thank Kamal and Sami ?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. our - We - on - plant - food - farms.
.....
2. on - I - play - always - tennis - Saturdays.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I would like [a] salt, please.
2. My friend was [read] a book.

7 Punctuate the following.

what would you like to eat for lunch
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite job

Guiding elements :

- What is it ?
- Why is it your favorite one ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My favorite food is
a. coconut b. mango c. apple d. banana
- My sister thinks if we eat a little mango, it's.....
a. harmful b. OK c. unhealthy d. bad
- My dad collects lemons to make
a. pasta b. fresh juice c. pies d. rice
- I like to grow with my dad.
a. food b. fruit c. nuts d. chocolate

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A is a very large building built a long time ago.
a. castle b. shade c. giant d. pool
- Gases from cars or factories are
a. toxic b. boring c. interesting d. honest
- I always wear my swimming in the sea.
a. goggles b. pools c. pitch d. court
- kept records for important things.
a. Scribes b. Farmers c. Traders d. Doctors

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

takes - looks - prepare - makes - gives

Amir is a vet. He [1] after elephants. He [2] sure they are happy and healthy. He must [3] their food. He [4] them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My uncle Samy takes his family to the parks every Friday. There, he plays with his children. They play football. The mother makes a lot of sandwiches. They have lunch and ice cream. In the park, they can see birds flying and lots of flowers and trees.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Uncle Samy plays with his in the park.
a. children b. brothers c. friends d. parents
- The mother makes
a. cake b. basbousa c. ice cream d. sandwiches

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does uncle Samy take his family every Friday ?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. any - Are - there - tomatoes ?

2. is - smart - **Our** - uniform - really - school.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Where [did] you sleeping ?

2. She [not must] waste her time.

7 Punctuate the following.

i never go to school on Fridays

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

A vet

Guiding elements:

- How does your father help animals ?

- What does he do ?

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Fareeda lives in
a. Tanta b. Assiut c. Cairo d. Aswan
- Fareeda has sisters.
a. two b. three c. four d. no
- The girls play together in the.....
a. house b. park c. street d. supermarket
- goes to the supermarket with her dad.
a. Maryam b. Fareeda c. Mom d. Sara

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Nada wants for dessert.
a. onions b. eggs c. mahalabia d. fish
- Squash is a good
a. sport b. dish c. cage d. club
- Mazen likes to the piano.
a. do b. make c. read d. play
- look after ill people and make medicine.
a. Doctors b. Traders c. Craftsmen d. Scribes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

villages - traffic - decorated - calm - air

Last week, we visited Aswan. It's a [1] place. The [2] is clean and healthy. We visited the Nubian [3], they have beautiful [4] houses. There are a lot of things to see there.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Rania and her sister Dina had breakfast very early in the morning. After breakfast, they had orange juice. Then Rania cleaned the flat. Dina washed the dishes in the kitchen. When their friend Laila came, they went out. Laila wanted to buy swimming goggles. In the evening, Rania and Dina went back home and Laila gave them two stories to read. The stories were nice. The next morning, the two sisters thanked their friend because they enjoyed the stories a lot.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. cleaned the flat.

a. Dina

b. Laila

c. Mother

d. Rania

2. Laila loves

a. reading

b. swimming

c. cleaning

d. cooking

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did the two sisters thank Laila ?

.....

4. What did Dina do in the kitchen ?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. really - uniform - Our - is - smart - school.

.....

2. were - Egyptian - good - very - craftsmen - Ancient.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Emad [drive] to work at 10 am every day.

2. Maryam was [travel] with her friends.

7 Punctuate the following.

Did nagwa have a good trip

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

Healthy food

Guiding elements :

• important

• unhealthy

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Farmers crops like wheat, corn and flax.
a. damaged b. bought c. ate d. planted
2. used to weave clothes and make cooking pots.
a. Farmers b. Vets c. Scribes d. Craftsmen
3. traveled up and down the Nile buying and selling goods.
a. Women b. Doctors c. Traders d. Vets
4. Women could weave baskets and make
a. sandals b. chairs c. cakes d. tables

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wear football to play football.
a. goggles b. sandals c. boots d. rackets
2. In a heat wave , you must stay in the
a. storm b. shade c. rain d. sun
3. Sunlight, rocks and water are things.
a. non-living b. living c. plants d. animals
4. Chocolate is if you eat a lot.
a. healthy b. rice c. unhealthy d. important

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

juice - garden - salad - sun - healthy

My favorite fruit is mango. It is [1] and delicious. My grandfather grows mango trees in the [2] We can drink delicious mango [3] We can use mango to make fruit [4] If we add sugar and milk, we can turn it into mahalabia.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Noha . I am in grade five. I love playing sports. They make me strong. I like playing tennis very much. I usually go to the tennis court.

I am good at playing tennis , but I am bad at playing squash. I can move fast. Hany is my brother. He is 10 years old. He likes playing football. He also likes watching football matches on TV. He likes watching the matches of Mohamed Salah . Hany runs very fast. He wears his football boots. He is great at playing football ,but he is bad at karate. He plays football in the club every Friday.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about
a. friends b. schools c. drinks d. sports
2. Hany likes watching football on TV.
a. boots b. pitch c. matches d. court

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Which sport is Noha good at ?

.....

4. Where does Hany play football ?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. look - their - children - Women - after.

.....

2. the park - in the rain - go - I - to - never.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. My dad is very bad at [make] cakes.

2. She usually [have] a sandwich for lunch.

7 Punctuate the following.

when did Adam go to Sohag

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

My school uniform

Guiding elements :

- shirt
- trousers

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Hisham likes
a. sports b. clothes c. games d. cats
- Hisham's favorite sport is
a. football b. tennis c. volleyball d. squash
- Hisham uses his to play squash.
a. boots b. rackets c. goggles d. shoes
- Hisham is bad at playing
a. karate b. tennis c. football d. squash

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Farmers grow a lot of
a. baskets b. books c. boxes d. crops
- I wear a when I do karate.
a. jacket b. dress c. suit d. hat
- My uncle planted an orange tree in his
a. house b. office c. room d. garden
- It's cold , I'll wear my
a. jacket b. shorts c. necklace d. hat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

back - pack - excited - shorts - sunglasses

I'm Nadia. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family next week. We are very [1] We need to [2] our suitcases. My brother Nader needs to pack his swimming [3] to swim in the sea. I will take my [4] because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Samy. I went with my family to Aswan last Friday. We took our father's car. We visited Elephantine Island. Elephantine Island is the oldest part in Aswan. Elephantine Island is beautiful and peaceful. There is no traffic, so it's quiet and the air is clean. The sunset is fantastic. We were going to one of the Nubian villages this morning. We had lunch there. I'll be sad to leave.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about "" .

a. The Nile

b. Elephantine Island

c. Weather

d. Sports

2. The sunset in the island is

a. ugly

b. hot

c. cold

d. fantastic

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When did they go to Aswan ?

.....

4. How did they go to Aswan ?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to - bread - need - We - buy.

.....

2. go - does - How often - school - to - she ?

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Hani is great at [read] English.

2. Is there [some] water in the fridge ?

7 Punctuate the following.

Does Ahmed go to school on monday

.....

8 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY [30] words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite sport

Guiding elements :

• play football • good at

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Fares is years old.
[five - ten - four]
2. He has got brothers.
[three - two - one]
3. They go to the park on
[Saturday - Tuesday - Friday]

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the following words.

Yes - vet - do - animals

Ahmed : What job do you want to [1] when you grow up ?

Omar : I want to be a [2]

Ahmed : Do you like [3] ?

Omar : [4], I do.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian sports person. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic games in 2021. She was born in April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. What is Hedaya Malak's sport ?
.....
2. When was she born ?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. She began practicing at the age of seven.
[taekwondo - football - tennis]
4. Hedaya carried her country's in 2021. [cup - club - flag]
5. She won the bronze in Tokyo in 2021.
[necklace - medal - glasses]

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. Candies and cola are
a. healthy b. fresh c. unhealthy
2. The weather is It's very hot.
a. windy b. sunny c. cloudy
3. I wear to protect my eyes.
a. sunglasses b. gloves c. crown
4. She's good at poems.
a. write b. writing c. wrote
5. Are there carrots ?
a. an b. some c. any

5 Reorder the following words to correct sentences.

1. sleep - I - late - never.
.....
2. an orange - Would - like - you ?
.....
3. red - sweater - I'll - pack - my.
.....
4. very - summers - We - hot - have.
.....
5. hard - must - work - You.
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Hisham is years old. [ten - four - eleven]
2. His father is a [farmer - teacher - doctor]
3. Hisham speaks English with [brothers - tourists - friends]

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the following words.

teacher - job - reading - Yes

Adel : What [1]..... do you want to do when you grow up ?

Ahmed : I want to be a [2]..... .

Adel : Do you like [3]..... stories ?

Ahmed : [4]....., I do.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

Water pollution is very bad. When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas. We call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in water. It can also affect our health. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change the habitats. So, we must keep the water clean. Our teachers always ask us to keep the environment clean to have a healthy life.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. What do your teachers ask you to do ?

.....

2. How is water pollution harmful to animals ?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Water pollution is [good - harmful - useful]

4. It's very to throw chemicals into water.

[bad - clean - not bad]

5. Water bodies are [people - fish - rivers, lakes and seas]

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. She in the sea yesterday at 6 am.

a. swim

b. swims

c. was swimming

2. I always wear a in winter.

a. coat

b. swimming shorts

c. T-shirt

3. We can buy and sell things at the

a. school

b. market

c. club

4. What you like to drink?

a. is

b. can

c. would

5. In a heat wave, you must stay in the

a. storm

b. sun

c. shade

5 Reorder the following words to make sentences.

1. food - What's - favorite - your ?

2. football - playing - good - They are - at.

3. a very - is - Egypt - beautiful - country.

4. and - insects - plants - eat - Animals.

5. have - I - Can - juice - some ?

الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنوفية الأزهرية

٣ محافظة المنوفية

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. People play football on [matches - pitches - beaches]
2. A football team has players. [twelve - eleven - eighteen]
3. The winning team scores the most [matches - goals - ball]

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the following words.

grapes - would - some - buying

Seller: Hello, [1] you like some bananas ?

Ali : No, thank you. I would like some [2]

Seller: How about [3] some oranges ?

Ali : Yes, I would like [4]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Seif. I'm in grade five. I live with my family in Cairo. My school uniform is a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. When it is cold, we can wear our blue sweaters.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. Which grade is Seif in ?

2. What are the colors of the uniform ?

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Seif is in grade [five - four - three]
4. The girls wear a blue [trousers - socks - skirt]
5. When it is cold, they wear blue [skirts - sweaters - shorts]

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I was traveling by to the island.
a. boat b. foot c. metro
2. Tourism gives for local people.
a. food b. jobs c. sports
3. Aser is good at tennis.
a. play b. playing c. plays
4. I had a bad dream. It was a
a. nightmare b. green house c. emissions
5. Basel take his bag last week.
a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't

5 Reorder the following words to make sentences.

1. went - I - my - to - sleep - bedroom - to.
.....

2. He - with - in - lived - a town - wife - his.
.....

3. Mexico - hats - wear - People - in.
.....

4. wearing - Soha - a - is - dress - spotted.
.....

5. coffee - like - you - Would - some ?
.....

اختبار خاص بطلاب الدمج

إدارة المنتزة ثان التعليمية

■ محافظة الإسكندرية

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text.

desert - weather - tourists - hot

We love Egypt. We have nice in Egypt. It is in summer.
It is cool in winter. It doesn't often rain in the Many visit
Egypt.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A is a very, very big person.
a. giant b. cage c. shop d. class
2. My favorite is rice.
a. fruit b. vegetable c. drink d. food
3. water can make people ill.
a. Sad b. Good c. Clean d. Dirty
4. It is so hot. Let's go and sit in the
a. drink b. sun c. shade d. hat

3 Read the text and answer the questions below.

Mona visited her grandma last Friday. She went with her friends. They went there by car. They bought nice presents for grandma. Grandma baked a nice cake. They came home after lunch.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Mona visited her [teacher - grandma - uncle - friend]
2. They went by [taxi - bus - car - train]
3. They bought nice [pizza - cakes - presents - cookies]
4. Grandma baked a [cake - pizza - candy - bread]

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences.

1. grow - Egypt - Mangoes- in
a. Mangoes grow in Egypt.
b. Egypt Mangoes in grow.
c. Mangoes in grow Egypt.
2. Ahmed - watching - is - a match
a. watching Ahmed is a match.
b. Ahmed is watching a match.
c. a match is Ahmed watching.

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d.

1. She goes to school on foot.
 2. She comes home at 2 o'clock.
 3. Dalia is a student.
 4. She watches TV in the evening.
- a. 4, 2, 1, 3 b. 3, 1, 2, 4 c. 2, 3, 1, 4 d. 2, 1, 3, 4



Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع Choose the correct answer

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

A.

My favorite season is summer. The weather is usually sunny. I enjoy going to the beach on holidays. When it is windy, there is a lot of dust.

B.

That's the recipe for making basbousa. We put honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. We boil the mixture for about ten minutes. We pour the syrup over the basbousa.

C.

My name is Ali. I am a shoemaker. I live with my wife. I have a small workshop. I use leather to make shoes.

[١] محافظة القاهرة [إدارة روض الفرج التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Ahmed. I'm in grade five. I like my school uniform because it is really smart. We wear white shirts and blue trousers. We have to wear a tie. Girls wear gray skirts and blue jackets. They don't wear trousers.

[٢] محافظة الجيزة [إدارة العجوزة التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My uncle has a farm. Every month, we go to visit him. My uncle grows potatoes and carrots. He has chickens and cows. We drink fresh milk. He lives in a big house and he has a donkey to help him on the farm.

[٣] محافظة الإسكندرية [إدارة المنتزه ثان التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is

one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag in 2021. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of 7 and won many prizes at the age of 14. She is a very kind person.

[٤] محافظة القليوبية [إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tourism is very important to many countries. Tourism gives jobs for local people. There are a lot of historical places in Egypt. Tourism helps people learn about new cultures. Eco-tourism looks after the environment so Egypt encourages it in many places.

[٥] محافظة الشرقية [إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada and he tells the tourists where they can dive. Normal tourism damages the natural environment.

[٦] محافظة المنوفية [إدارة الباجور التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. In fact, all the island is full of history. We went to the Aswan Museum. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.

[٧] محافظة الغربية [إدارة غرب طنطا التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Faten. I'm in grade five. I do a lot of activities. I always eat breakfast with my family. I don't like fish. I like drawing pictures of

flowers. I often play tennis in the club.

[٨] محافظة الدقهلية [إدارة ميت غمر التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Nora. I'm in grade five. I get up at six o'clock in the morning and I take a short shower. I eat my breakfast at 8 o'clock. Then I go to school. In the afternoon, I help my mom in the kitchen.

[٩] محافظة البحيرة [إدارة دمنهور التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I like practicing sports. My favorite sport is football. I play it on Fridays with my friends in the park. I wear my football boots. Football is an exciting sport.

[١٠] محافظة كفر الشيخ [إدارة شرق كفر الشيخ التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Our school uniform is smart. The boys and girls have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. They wear white shirts and they've got a dark red sweater when it gets cold. We all like our school. We play football with our friends at school.

[١١] محافظة دمياط [إدارة دمياط التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I visited Aswan with my family. We went to the Elephantine Island. We went there on Friday. We traveled to the island by boat. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.

[١٢] محافظة بورسعيد [إدارة شمال التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name's Rana. I work with animals. If animals are sick, I help to make them better. If an animal

needs an operation, the room has to be very clean. I go to people's farms to check on the animals. The worst part is when an animal gets sick in the night.

[١٣] محافظة السويس [إدارة جنوب التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Jana. I'll go to the market with my mom tomorrow. We need to buy bread, rice and onions. There aren't any onions in the fridge. I would like to have koshari for lunch on Monday, so we will buy some ingredients for it.

[١٤] محافظة الإسماعيلية [إدارة القصاصين التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Soha. I'm good at making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball.

Omar is my brother. He is fourteen years old. He's good at playing tennis but he's bad at helping me in the kitchen!

[١٥] محافظة بني سويف [إدارة ناصر التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Dina and Fareeda love chocolate. Dina thinks chocolate is unhealthy. Dina and Fareeda like mango because it is a healthy food. Fareeda has a mango tree, but Dina has a lemon tree.

[١٦] محافظة الفيوم [إدارة يوسف الصديق التعليمية]

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Amir. I am in primary five. My father is a fisherman. He catches fish early in the morning. My mother is a nurse. She goes to hospital every day at 8 o'clock. I have two brothers and a sister. My brothers are in primary three. My sister is in primary one.

[١٧] محافظة المنيا [إدارة ابو قرقاص التعليمية]

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

My favorite food is mango. Mango is delicious. My sister thinks it's OK if we eat a little mango. We have a lemon tree in our garden. My dad always collects lemons to make fresh juice. I like to grow fruit with my dad.

[١٨] محافظة أسيوط [إدارة القوصية التعليمية]

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Fareeda lives with her family in Cairo. She has two sisters, Maryam and Sara. Fareeda plays with her sisters in the park on Friday morning. Fareeda and Maryam help their mom to clean the house. Sara goes to the supermarket with her dad.

[١٩] محافظة سوهاج [إدارة سوهاج التعليمية]

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. Farmers planted crops like wheat, corn and flax. Craftsmen used to weave clothes and make cooking pots. Traders traveled up and down the Nile buying and selling goods. Women knew how to read. Women could weave baskets, make sandals and sell them at the market.

[٢٠] محافظة أسوان [إدارة كوم امبو التعليمية]

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

I'm Hisham. I like sports. I love watching squash. It's my favorite sport. I am very good at playing squash. I use my rackets to play squash. I am bad at playing football.

Sample Tests for Al-Azhar students

[١] محافظة الإسكندرية - منطقة الاسكندرية الازهرية

• **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I'm Fares. I'm ten years old. I have two brothers and one sister. On Friday, we go to the park and play football. I have lunch there with my family.

[٢] محافظة بني سويف [منطقة بني سويف الأزهرية]

• **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I'm Hisham. I'm eleven years old. I'm in grade five. My father is an English teacher. I like speaking English with tourists.

[٣] محافظة المنوفية [منطقة المنوفية الأزهرية]

• **Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I'm Ahmed. I'm good at playing football. It's a popular sport all over the world. Most people play it on football pitches. A football team has eleven players. The winning team scores the most goals.